

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

## ➤ Safe Driving P. 35

For Safe Driving P. 36      Seat Belts P. 40      Airbags P. 53

## ➤ Instrument Panel P. 89

Indicators P. 90      Gauges and Displays P. 137

## ➤ Controls P. 147

Clock P. 148      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 150  
Opening and Closing the Sunroof\* P. 182  
Adjusting the Seats P. 205

## ➤ Features P. 231

Audio System\* P. 232      Audio System Basic Operation P. 240, 263  
Customized Features P. 324

## ➤ Driving P. 397

Before Driving P. 398      Towing a Trailer\* P. 402  
Multi-View Rear Camera\* P. 491      Refueling P. 493

## ➤ Maintenance P. 499

Before Performing Maintenance P. 500      Oil Monitor System\* P. 503  
Replacing Light Bulbs P. 528  
Battery P. 551      Remote Transmitter Care P. 553

## ➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 563

Tools P. 564      If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 565  
Overheating P. 579      Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 582  
When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door P. 600

## ➤ Information P. 603

Specifications P. 604      Identification Numbers P. 607

# Contents

Child Safety P. 66

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 87

Safety Labels P. 88

Opening and Closing the Boot P. 172

Security System P. 175

Opening and Closing the Windows P. 178

Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 184

Adjusting the Mirrors P. 203

Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 213

Climate Control System P. 223

Audio Error Messages P. 316

General Information on the Audio System P. 318

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 357, 378

When Driving P. 408

Braking P. 468

Parking Your Vehicle P. 484

Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 497

Turbo Engine Vehicle\* P. 498

Maintenance Schedule\* P. 511

Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 516

Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 541

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 544

Climate Control System Maintenance P. 555

Cleaning P. 557

Accessories and Modifications P. 562

Engine Does Not Start P. 572

Jump Starting P. 575

Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 578

Fuses P. 589

Emergency Towing P. 598

When You Cannot Open the Boot P. 601

Devices that Emit Radio Waves\* P. 609

Quick Reference Guide P. 2

Safe Driving P. 35

Instrument Panel P. 89

Controls P. 147

Features P. 231

Driving P. 397

Maintenance P. 499

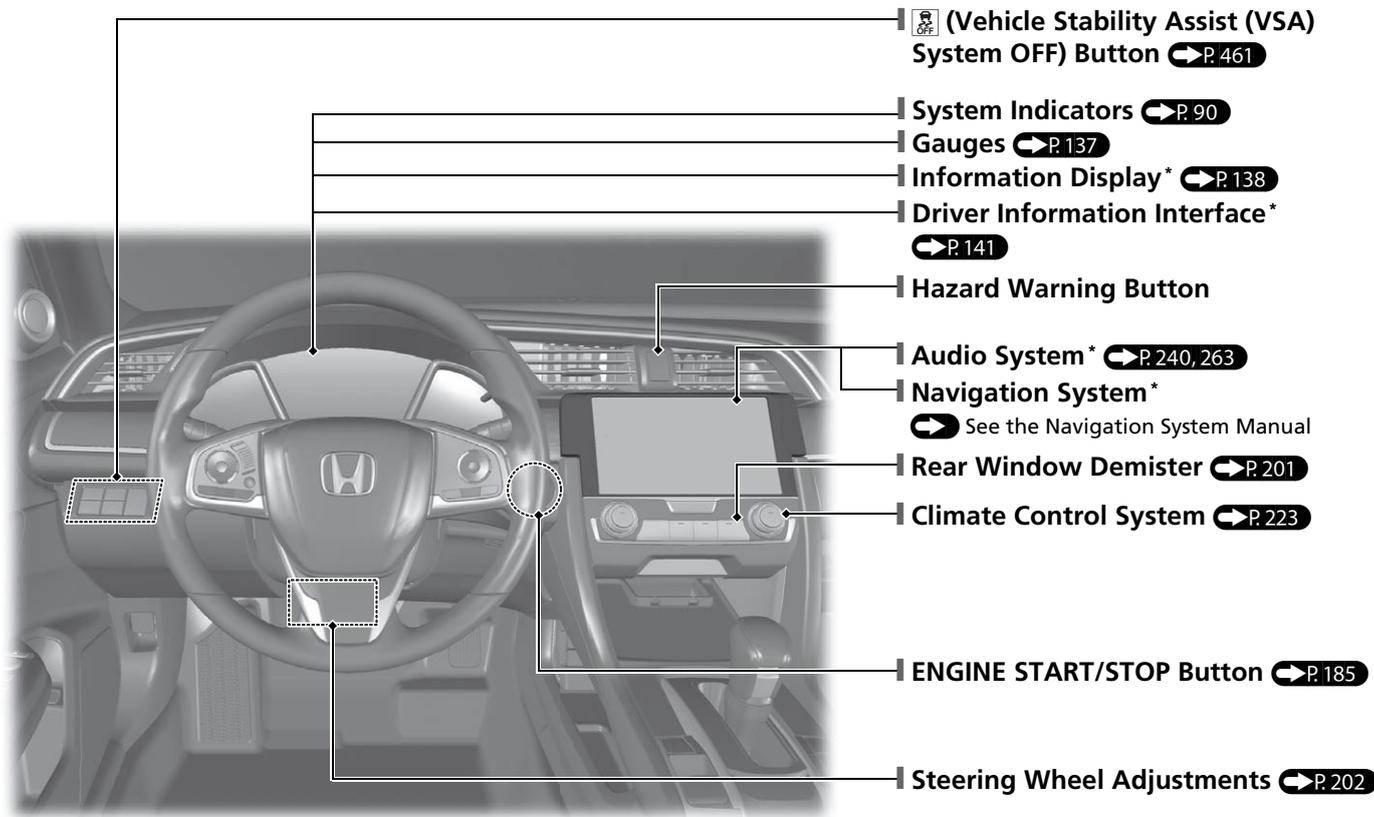
Handling the Unexpected P. 563

Information P. 603

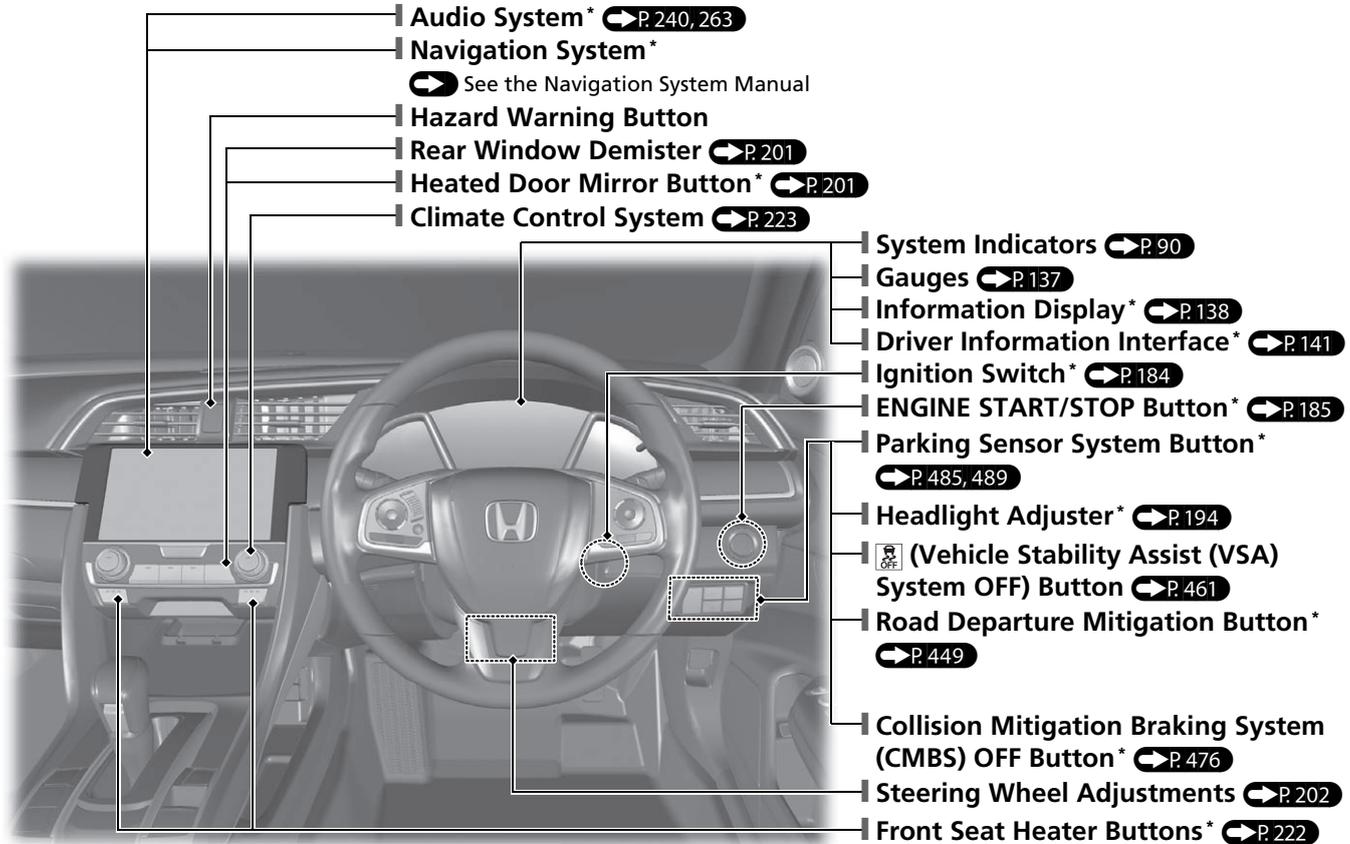
Index P. 611

# Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type

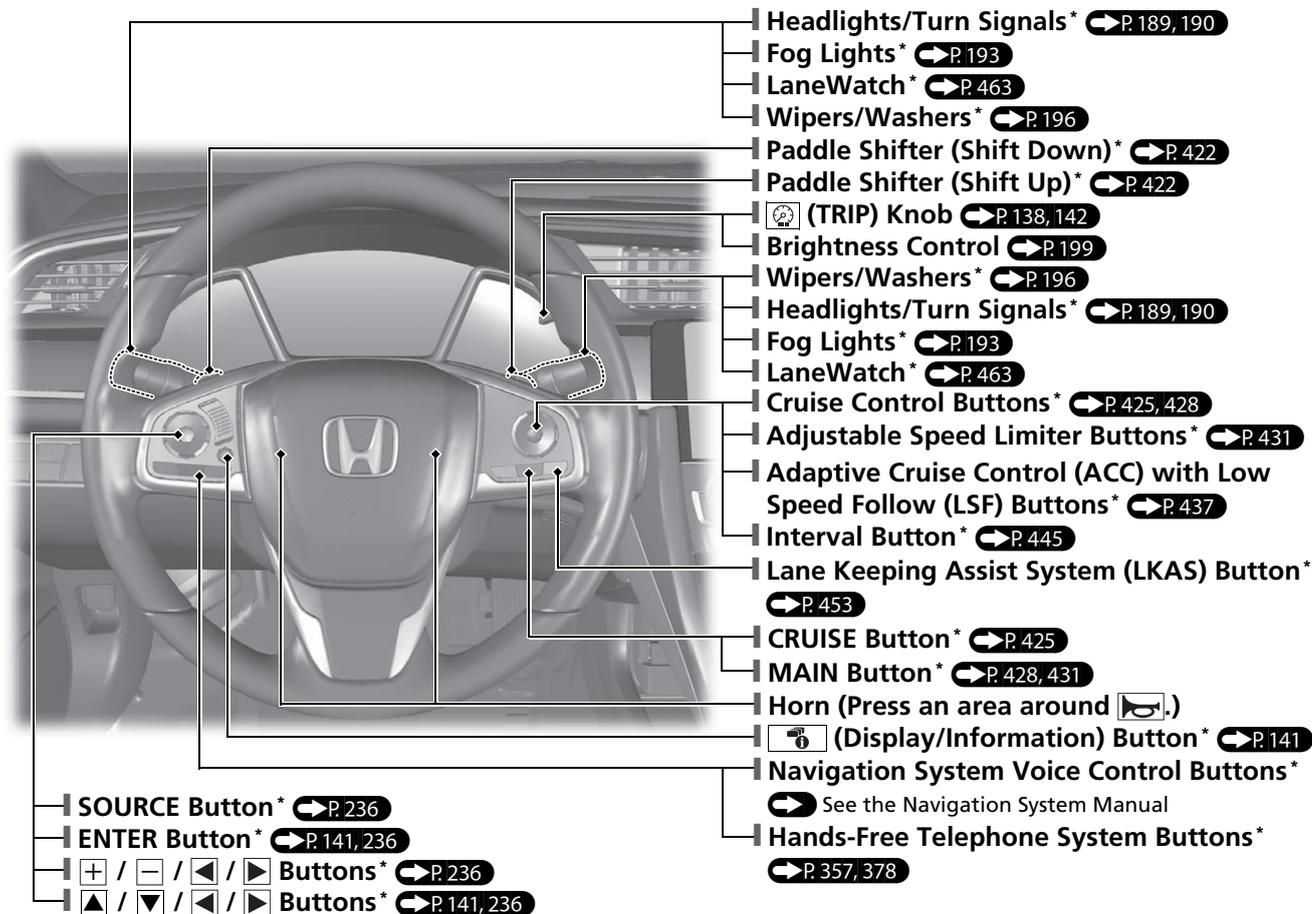


## Right-hand Drive Type



\* Not available on all models

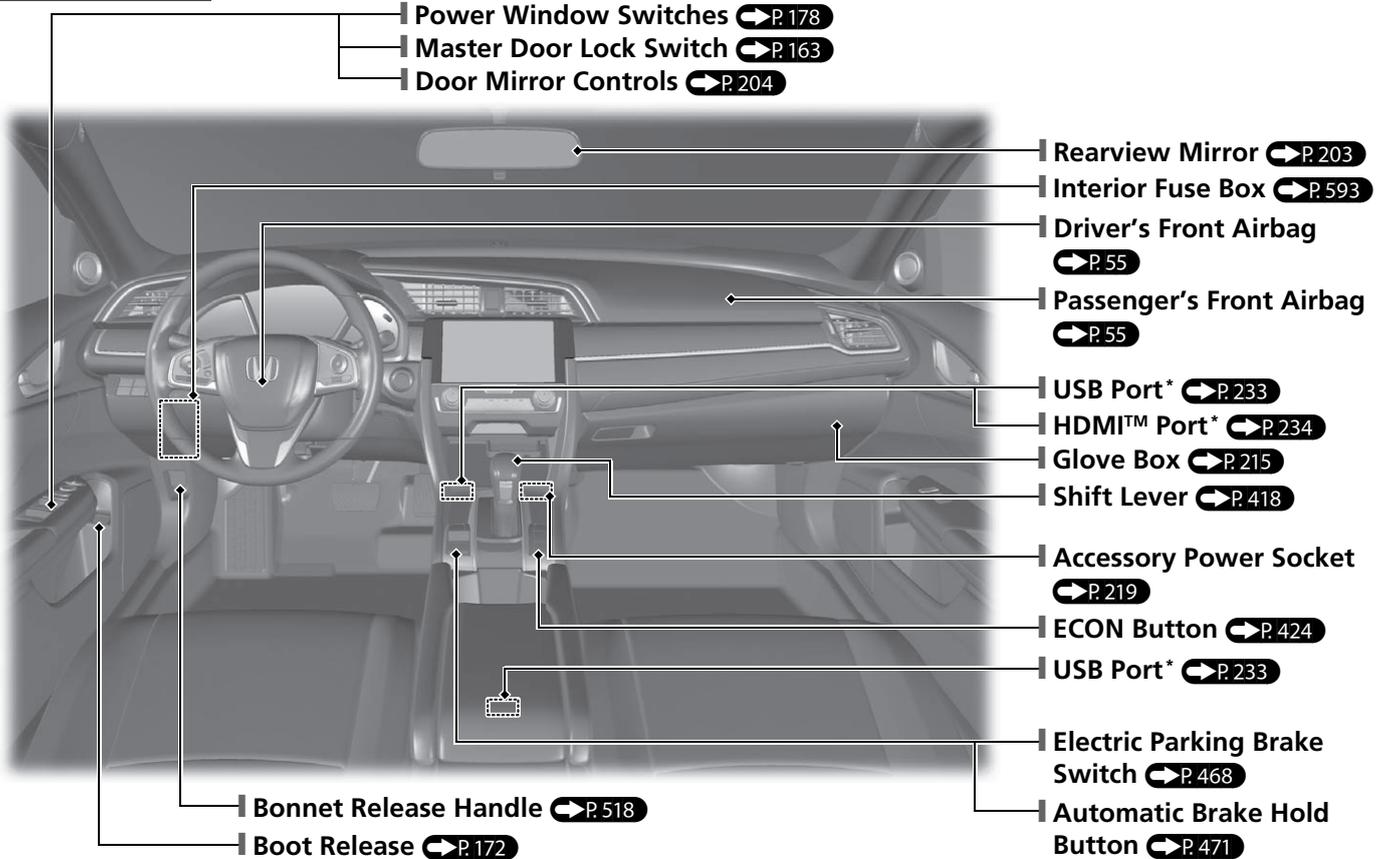
# Visual Index



- Headlights/Turn Signals\* ➔ P. 189, 190
- Fog Lights\* ➔ P. 193
- LaneWatch\* ➔ P. 463
- Wipers/Washers\* ➔ P. 196
- Paddle Shifter (Shift Down)\* ➔ P. 422
- Paddle Shifter (Shift Up)\* ➔ P. 422
- (TRIP) Knob ➔ P. 138, 142
- Brightness Control ➔ P. 199
- Wipers/Washers\* ➔ P. 196
- Headlights/Turn Signals\* ➔ P. 189, 190
- Fog Lights\* ➔ P. 193
- LaneWatch\* ➔ P. 463
- Cruise Control Buttons\* ➔ P. 425, 428
- Adjustable Speed Limiter Buttons\* ➔ P. 431
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Buttons\* ➔ P. 437
- Interval Button\* ➔ P. 445
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Button\* ➔ P. 453
- CRUISE Button\* ➔ P. 425
- MAIN Button\* ➔ P. 428, 431
- Horn (Press an area around )
- (Display/Information) Button\* ➔ P. 141
- Navigation System Voice Control Buttons\* ➔ See the Navigation System Manual
- Hands-Free Telephone System Buttons\* ➔ P. 357, 378

- SOURCE Button\* ➔ P. 236
- ENTER Button\* ➔ P. 141, 236
- + / - / ◀ / ▶ Buttons\* ➔ P. 236
- ▲ / ▼ / ◀ / ▶ Buttons\* ➔ P. 141, 236

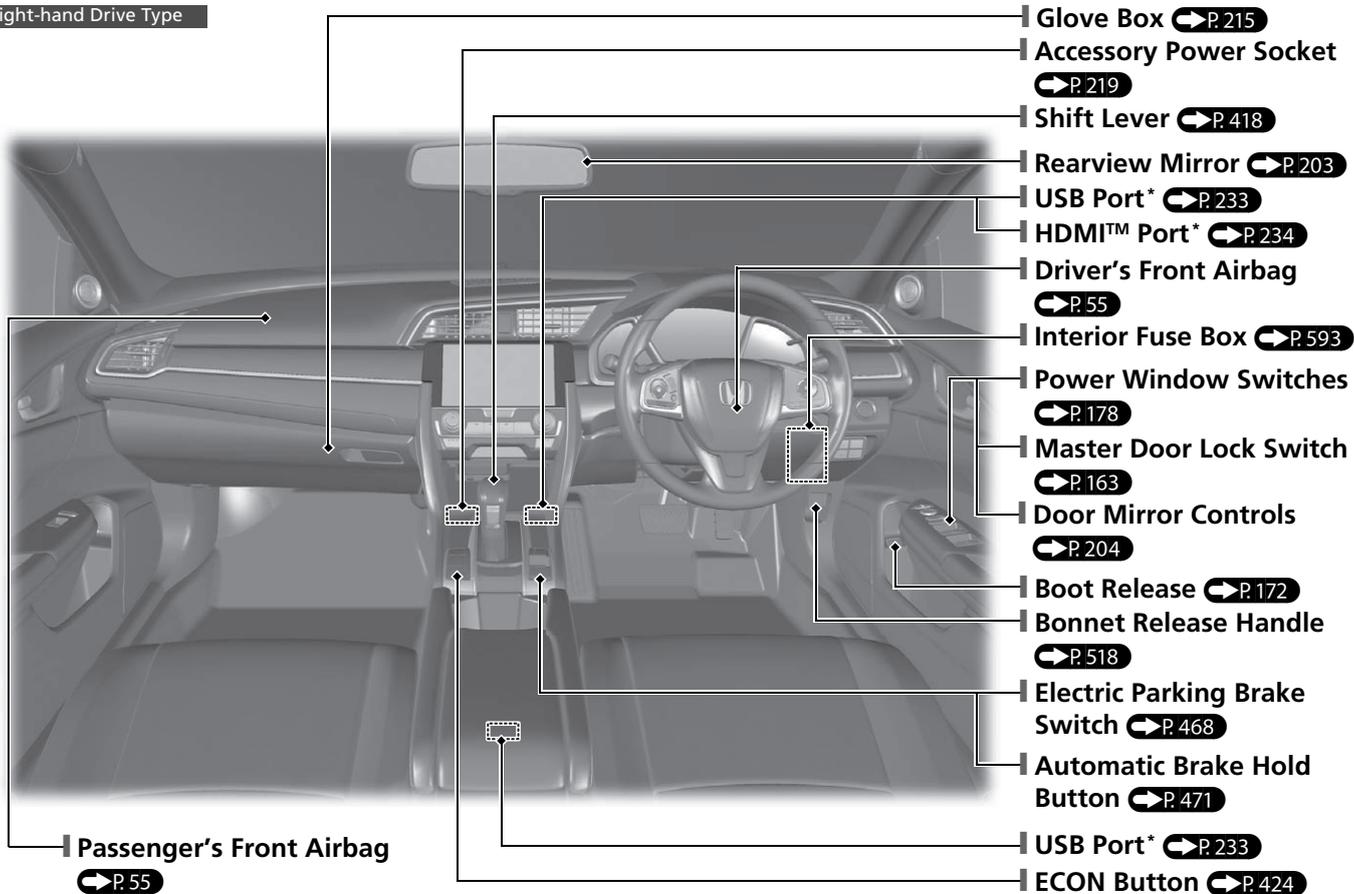
Left-hand Drive Type

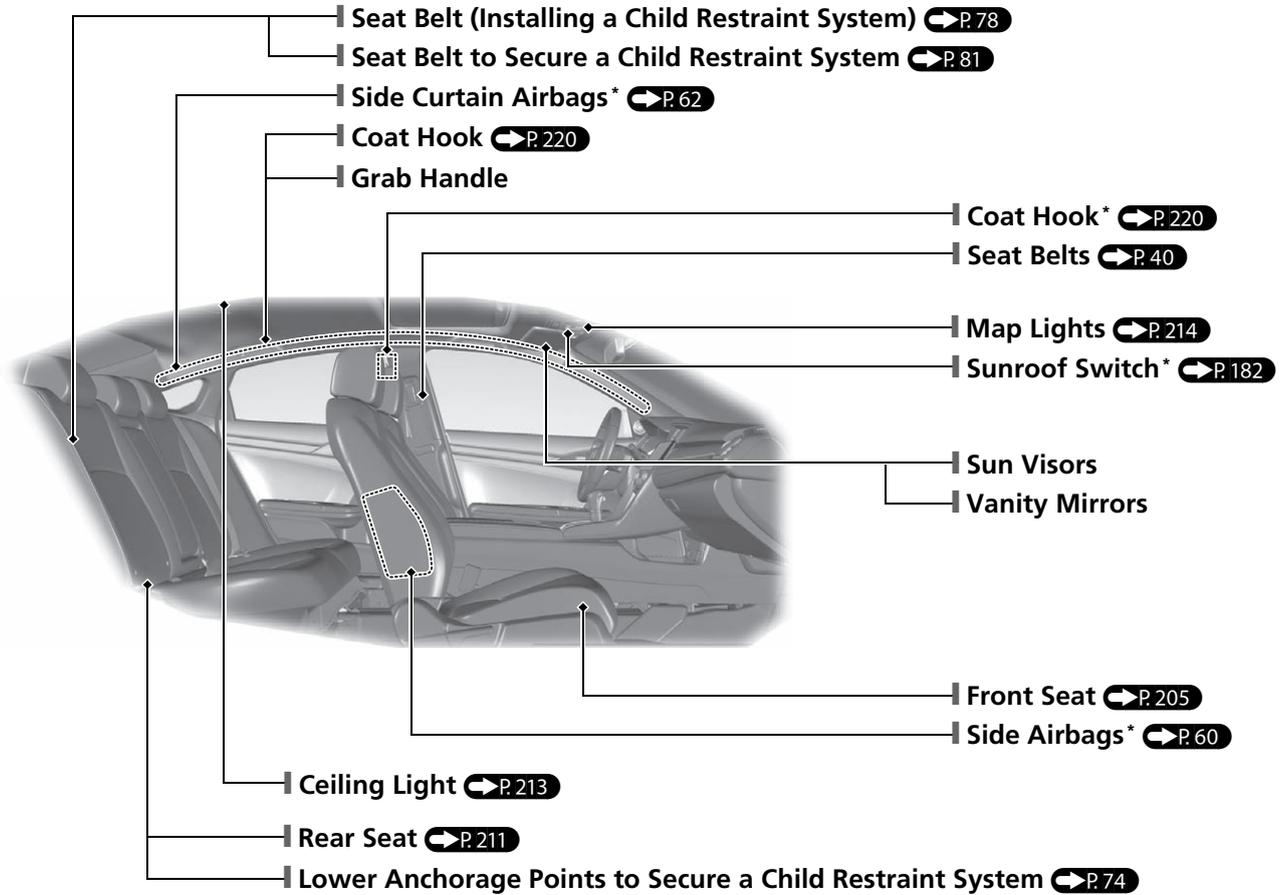


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

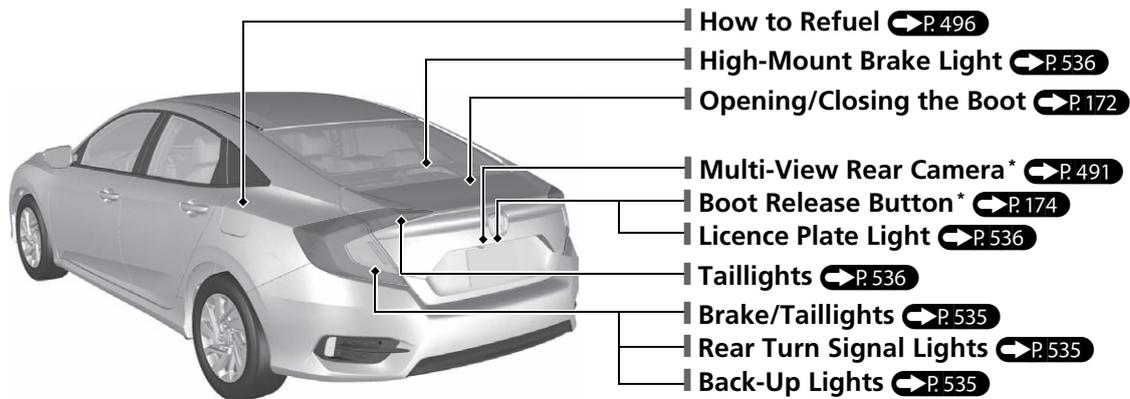
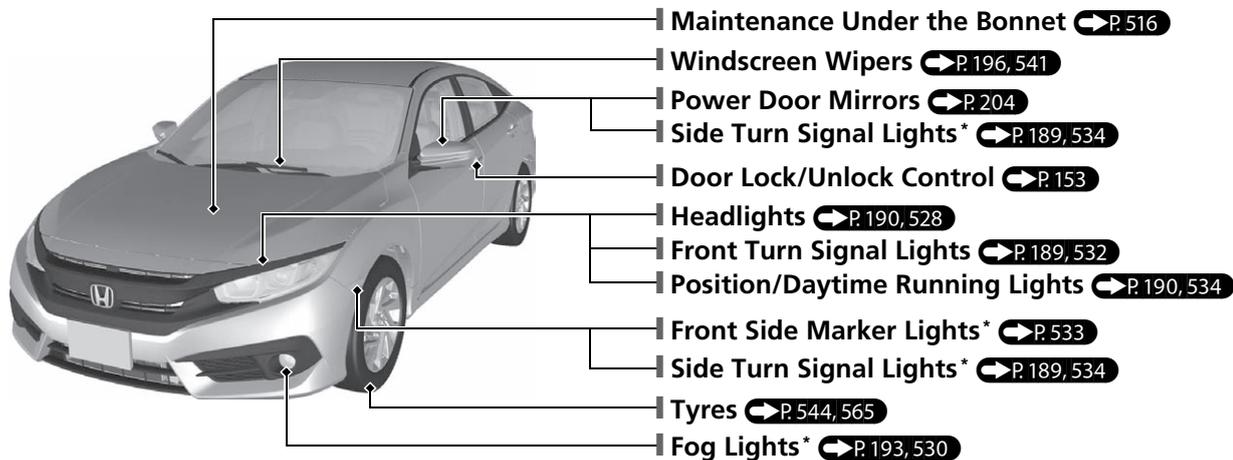
Right-hand Drive Type





\* Not available on all models

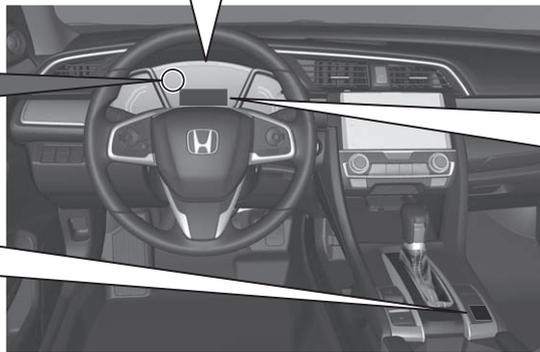
# Visual Index



# Eco Assist System

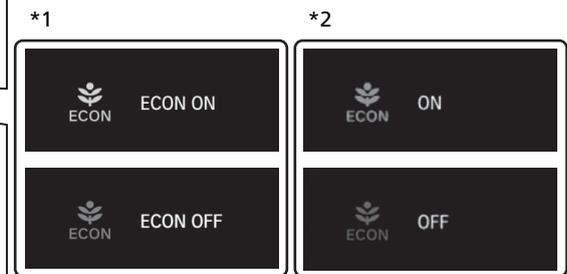
## Ambient Meter

- Changes colour to reflect your driving style.  
Green: Fuel efficient driving  
White green: Moderate acceleration/ deceleration  
White: Aggressive acceleration/ deceleration
- The ambient meter colour changes in accordance with your brake or accelerator pedal operation.



**ECON Button** ➔ P. 424  
Helps maximize fuel economy.

**ECON Mode Indicator** ➔ P. 107  
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



**Models with driver information interface**  
The message is displayed for a few seconds when the ECON button is pressed.

\*1: Except African models  
\*2: African models

\* Not available on all models

# Safe Driving [P.35](#)

## Airbags [P.53](#)

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety [P.66](#)

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard [P.87](#)

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts [P.40](#)

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist [P.39](#)

- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel P. 89

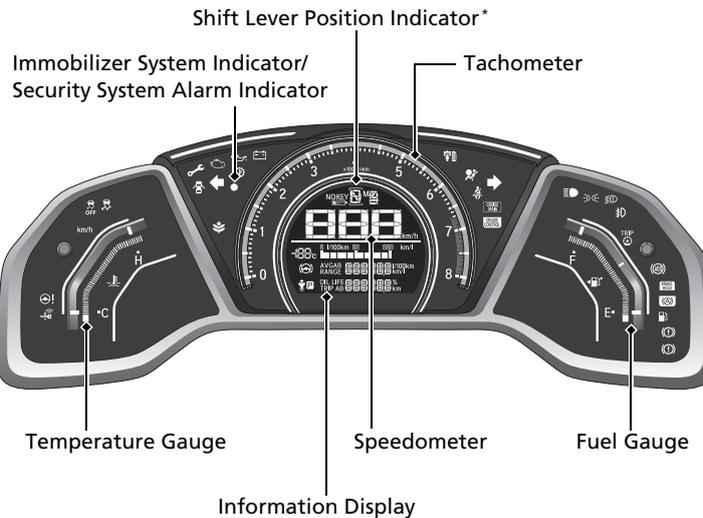
Gauges  P. 137 / Information Display\*  P. 138 /

Driver Information Interface\*  P. 141 / System Indicators  P. 90

Models with information display

## System Indicators

-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  Door and Boot Open Indicator
-  ECON Mode Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  Keyless Access System Indicator\*
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators



## Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator\*

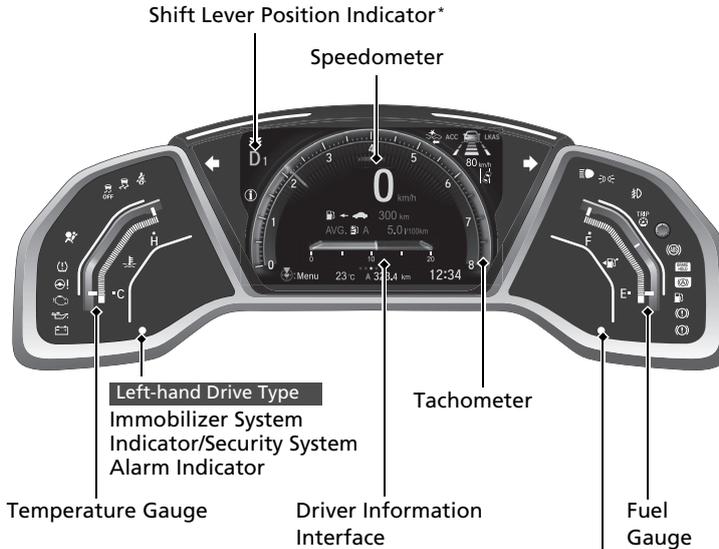
## System Indicators

-  Transmission Temperature Indicator
-  Light Control Indicator\*
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  **CRUISE MAIN** Indicator\*
-  **CRUISE CONTROL** Indicator\*
-  Starter System Indicator\*
-  Oil Monitor System Indicator\*
-  **BRAKE HOLD** Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  **BRAKE HOLD** Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  Shift to Park Indicator\*
-  Brake Depressing Indicator
-  Rotate Wheel Indicator\*

\* Not available on all models

## System Indicators

-  Malfunction Indicator Lamp
-  Low Oil Pressure Indicator
-  Charging System Indicator
-  Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator
-  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator
-  VSA OFF Indicator
-  Door and Boot Open Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator
-  Automatic Brake Hold Indicator
-  ECON Mode Indicator
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)
-  Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)
-  System Message Indicator
-  Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator\*



## Lights Indicators

-  Lights On Indicator
-  High Beam Indicator
-  Fog Light Indicator\*

## System Indicators

-  Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators
-  Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator
-  Low Fuel Indicator
-  Seat Belt Reminder Indicator
-  Supplemental Restraint System Indicator
-  Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber/Green)\*
-  Road Departure Mitigation Indicator\*
-  Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator\*
-  Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber/Green)\*

# Controls P.147

## Clock P.148

Models with colour audio system



- 1 Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2 Rotate  to change hour, then press .
- 3 Rotate  to change minute, then press .
- 4 Select **Set**, then press .

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate  to select.
- Press  to enter.

Models with Display Audio

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.



- 1 Select the  (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2 Select **Clock**, then **Clock Adjustment**.
- 3 Touch the respective  /  icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.
- 4 Select **OK**.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button \* P.185

- Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



## Turn Signals P.189

Left-hand drive type

Right-hand drive type for African

Turn Signal Control Lever

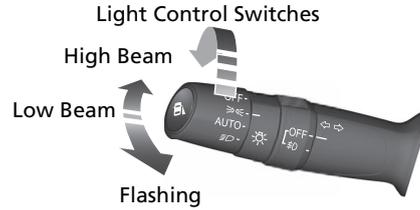


Right-hand drive type except for African

Turn Signal Control Lever



## Lights P.190



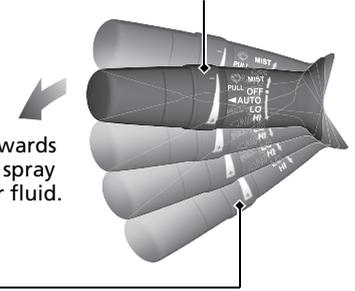
## Wipers and Washers P.196

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

Adjustment Ring\*

- : Low sensitivity\*<sup>1</sup>
- : Lower speed, fewer sweeps\*<sup>2</sup>
- : High sensitivity\*<sup>1</sup>
- : Higher speed, more sweeps\*<sup>2</sup>

Pull towards you to spray washer fluid.



**MIST**  
**OFF**

**AUTO**\*<sup>1</sup>: Wiper speed varies automatically  
**INT**\*<sup>2</sup>: Low speed with intermittent  
**LO**: Low speed wipe  
**HI**: High speed wipe

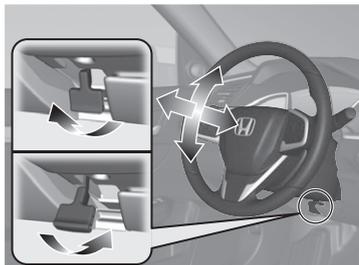
- \*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers
- \*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

**Models with automatic intermittent wipers**

**AUTO** should always be turned **OFF** before cleaning the windscreen or driving through a car wash.

## Steering Wheel P.202

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

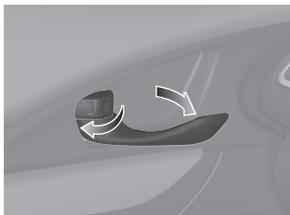
 P.162

### African models

- Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

### Except African models

- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



## Boot P.172



Boot Release Button

- To unlock and open the boot:
- Press the boot release button on the driver's door.
- Press the boot release button on the remote transmitter or the keyless remote.
- Press the boot release button\* on the boot lid, with carrying the keyless remote.

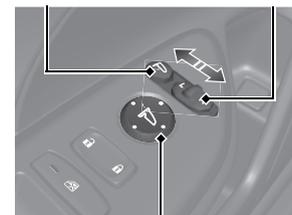
## Power Door Mirrors

 P.204

- With the ignition switch in ON \*1, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the fold button\* to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Fold Button

Selector Switch

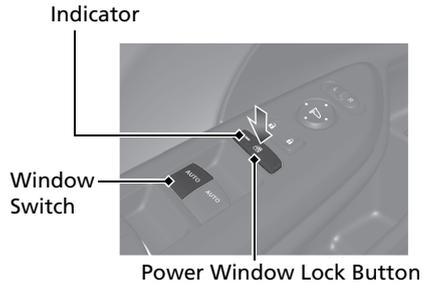


Adjustment Switch

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Power Windows P.178

- With the ignition switch in ON \*1, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator is on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

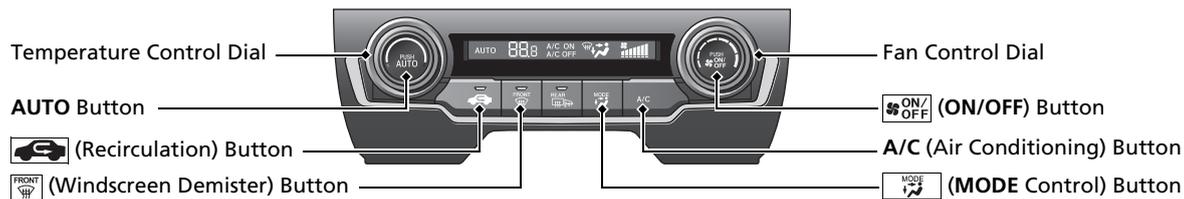


\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

# Climate Control System P.223

- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the  button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the  button to defrost the windscreen.

Models with colour audio system



-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
-  Air flows from dashboard vents.

Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button



Audio/Information Screen

 (CLIMATE) Button

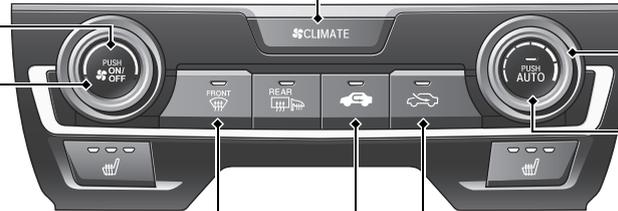
 (ON/OFF) Button

Fan Control Dial

 (Windscreen Demister) Button

 (Recirculation) Button

 (Fresh Air) Button



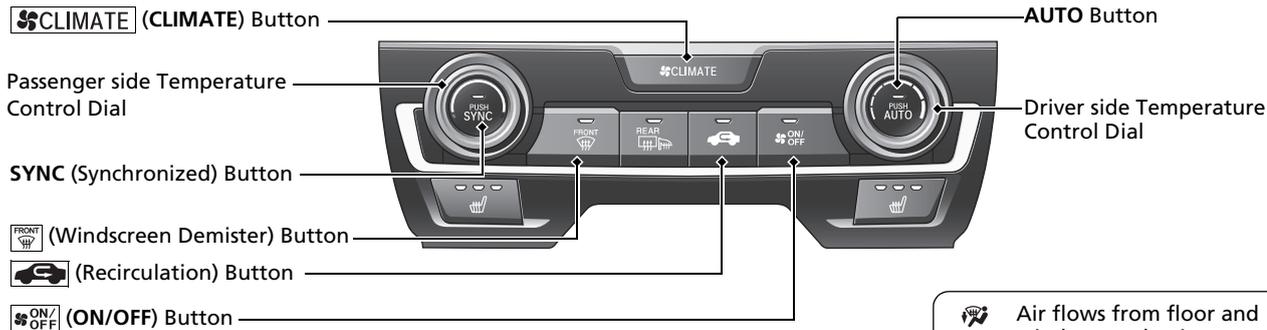
Temperature Control Dial

AUTO Button

-  Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
-  Air flows from floor vents.
-  Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
-  Air flows from dashboard vents.

Models with Display Audio

Models with SYNC button



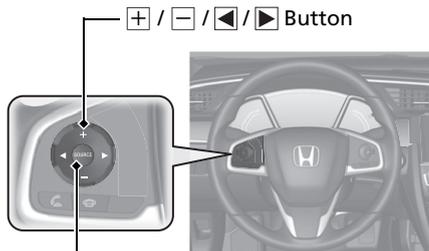
- Air flows from floor and windscreen demister vents.
- Air flows from floor vents.
- Air flows from floor and dashboard vents.
- Air flows from dashboard vents.

# Features P.231

## Audio Remote Controls

 P.236

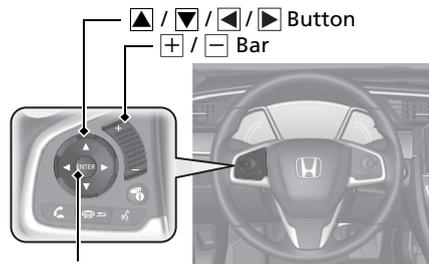
Models with colour audio system



**SOURCE** Button

-  Button  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- **SOURCE** Button  
Press to change the audio mode: FM1/  
FM2/LW\*/AM/USB/iPod/*Bluetooth*® Audio.
-  Button  
Radio: Press to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or  
previous strong station.  
USB device:  
Press to skip to the beginning of  
the next song or return to the  
beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.

Models with Display Audio



**ENTER** Button

-  Bar  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
-  Button  
Press  or  to cycle through the audio  
mode as follows:  
FM→DAB\*→AM→USB→iPod→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio→Apps\*→  
Audio Apps\*→AUX-HDMI™

- When listening to the radio

- 1 Press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- 2 Press  or  to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to a USB flash drive

- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
- 2 Press  or  to select a folder.
- 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
- 4 Press  or  to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod

- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
- 2 Press  or  to select a category.
- 3 Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
- 4 Press  or  to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
  - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press  or  repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio

- 1 Press **ENTER** to display the track list.
- 2 Press  or  to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

-  /  Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station.  
Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
Press and hold to change a folder.



Button:

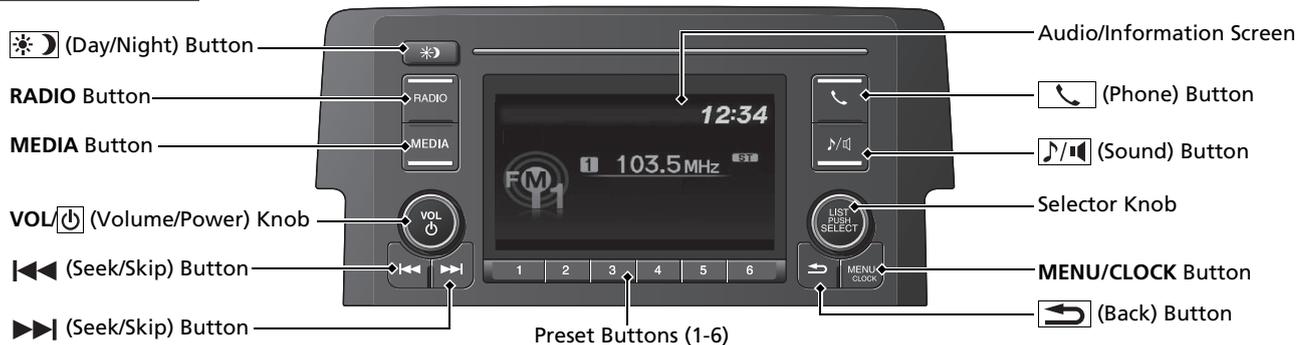
Press to change contents.

 **Driver Information Interface\***  **P.141**

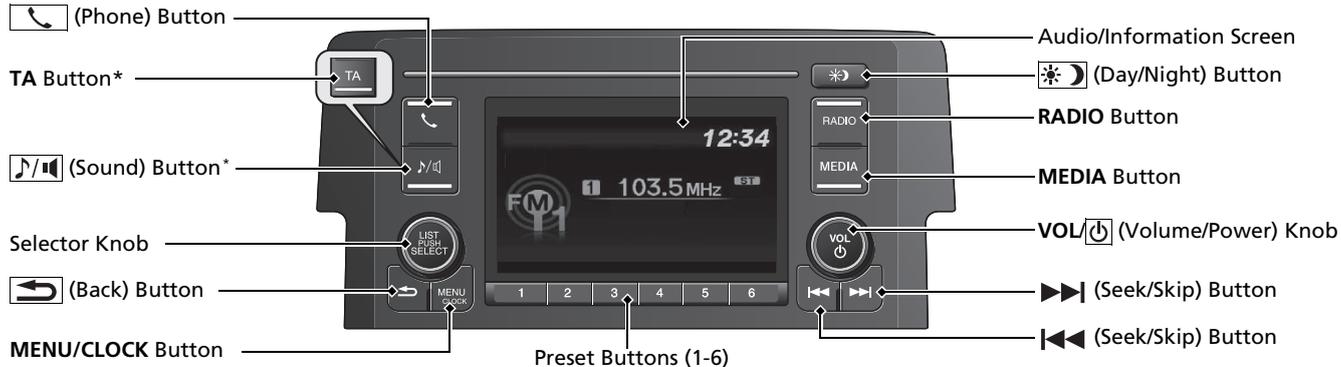
# Audio system\* P.232

Models with colour audio system  P.240

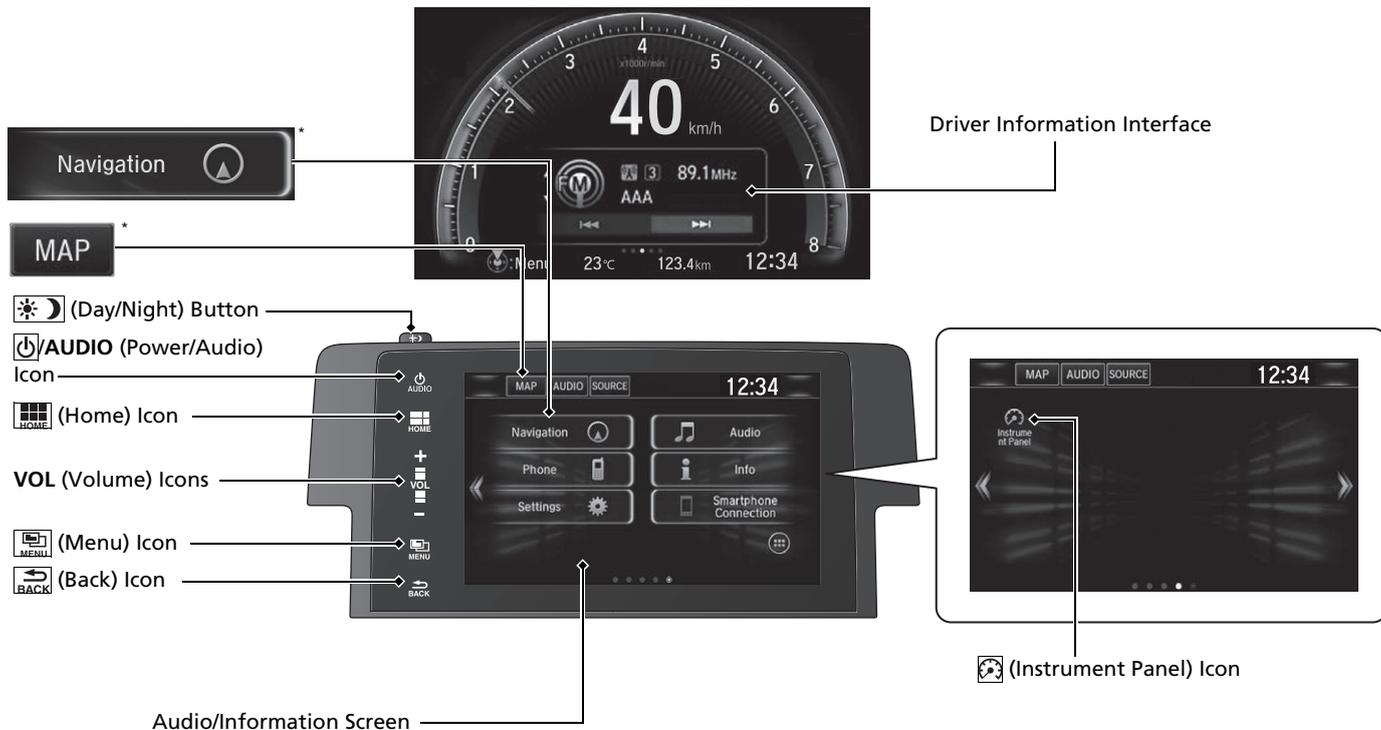
## Left-hand Drive Type



## Right-hand Drive Type



For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



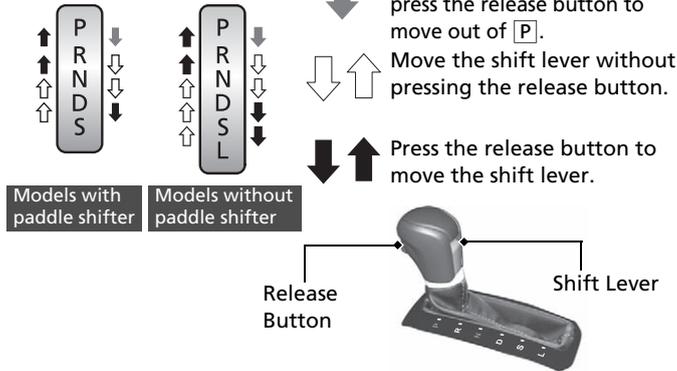
# Driving

## Continuously Variable Transmission



- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

### Shifting



**P** **Park**  
Turn off or start the engine.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**  
Used when reversing.

**N** **Neutral**  
Transmission is not locked.

**D** **Drive (S)**

- Normal driving.
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.

**S** **Drive (S)**

- Better acceleration.
- Increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.
- On models with paddle shifter, 7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

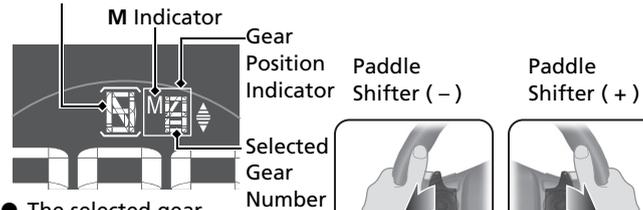
**L** **Low\***

- Further increased engine braking.
- Going up or down hills.

### Paddle Shifters\*

- Paddle shifters allow you to shift gears much like a manual transmission (1st through 7th). This is useful for engine braking.
- D-paddle shift mode: The transmission will shift back to automatic mode once the system detects that the vehicle is cruising.
- Sequential shift mode: Holds the selected gear, and the **M** indicator comes on.

#### Shift Lever Position Indicator



- The selected gear position is shown in the instrument panel.



## VSA On and Off P.461

- The vehicle stability assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the engine.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* P.425

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.

### Models without Adjustable Speed Limiter

- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press **-/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

### Models with Adjustable Speed Limiter

- To use cruise control, press the **MAIN** button. Select cruise control by pressing the **LIM** button, then press **-/SET** once you have achieved the desired speed (above 30 km/h).

## CMBS On and Off P.476

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Adjustable Speed Limiter\* P.431

- This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.
- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h to 250 km/h.

## Deflation Warning System (DWS)\* P.465

The deflation warning system detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

## Refueling P. 493

**Fuel recommendation:** **Thai models with 1.8 L engine**  
**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

**Thai models with 1.5 L engine**

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

**Pakistani models with 1.8 L engine**

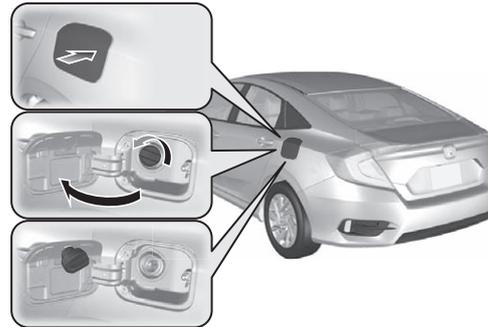
**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 87 or higher**

**Other models**

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

**Fuel tank capacity: 47 L**

- 1** Unlock the driver's door.
- 2** Press the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
- 3** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.
- 4** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 5** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.

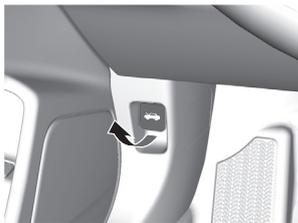


# Maintenance ➔ P. 499

## Under the Bonnet ➔ P. 516

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1 Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



- 2 Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3 When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades ➔ P. 541

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen.



## Tyres ➔ P. 544

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights ➔ P. 528

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected P.563

## Flat Tyre P.565

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre in the boot.



## Engine Won't Start P.572

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating P.579

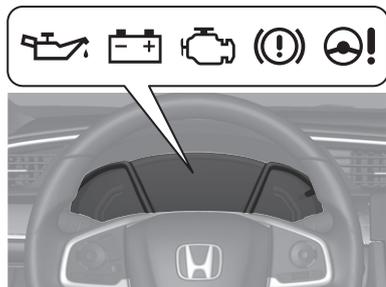
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Indicators Come On

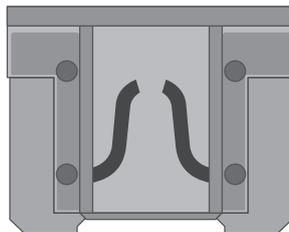
 P.582

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P.589

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing P.598

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** Models without keyless access system  
The ignition switch does not turn from **0** to **I**. Why?

Models with keyless access system  
The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**. Why?

**A** • The steering wheel may be locked.

Models without keyless access system  
• Try to turn the steering wheel left and right while turning the ignition key.

Models with keyless access system  
• Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



**Q** Models without keyless access system  
The ignition switch does not turn from **I** to **0** and I cannot remove the key. Why?

Models with keyless access system  
The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**. Why?

**A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.

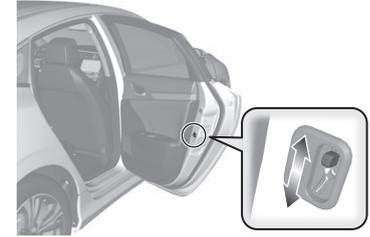


**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open a door within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.

**Models without keyless access system**

- The key is left in the ignition switch.

**Models with keyless access system**

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when the driver and/or front passenger\* are not wearing their seat belts.

---

**Q** Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?

**A** Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.

---

**Q** Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?

**A**

- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in **P** or **N**. If so, select any other position.

---

**Q** Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?

**A** The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

**Indonesian models**

**Unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher is recommended.**

**Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 88 or lower on this vehicle?**



Unleaded petrol with a research octane number of 91 or higher is recommended.

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. Use of petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

**Pakistani 1.5 L engine models**

**Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 87 or higher on this vehicle?**



Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

## Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels**  **P. 88**

## A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	36
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	38
Safety Checklist .....	39

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	40
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	46
Seat Belt Inspection.....	50
Anchorage Points.....	51

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	53
Types of Airbags.....	55

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	55
Side Airbags* .....	60
Side Curtain Airbags* .....	62
Airbag System Indicators.....	64
Airbag Care .....	65

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	66
Safety of Infants and Small Children...	69
Safety of Larger Children .....	84

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	87
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	88
-----------------------	----

\* Not available on all models

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

---

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ▣ Important Safety Precautions

---

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

■ **Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

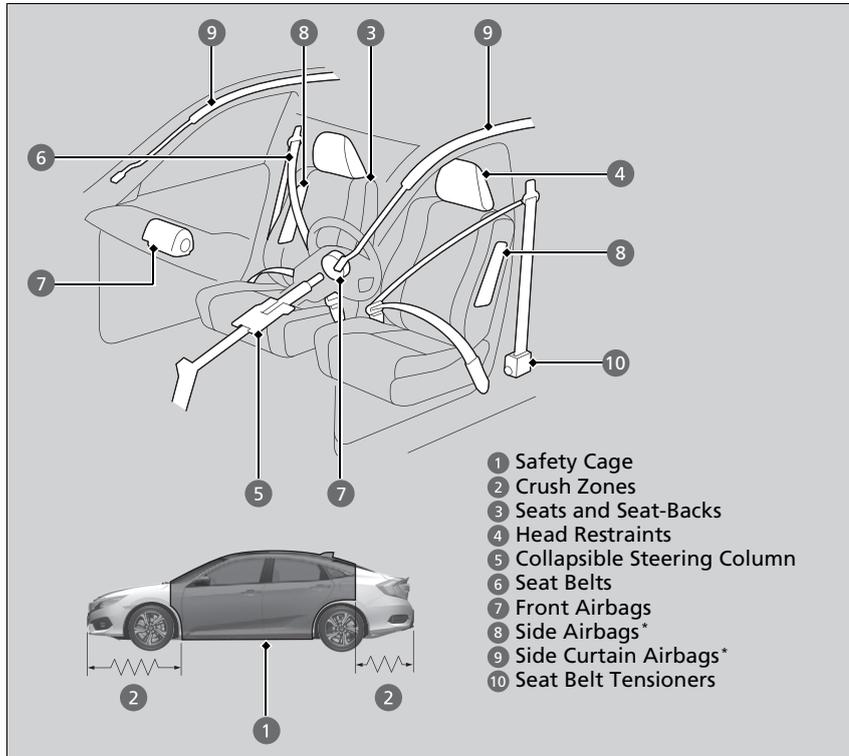
■ **Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

■ **Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- **Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside** P. 162

  - Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 205
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
- **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 205
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
- **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
- **Child Safety** P. 66

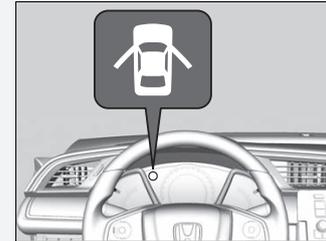
\* Not available on all models

### ► Safety Checklist

#### Models with information display

If the door/boot open indicator is on, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors tightly until the indicator goes off.

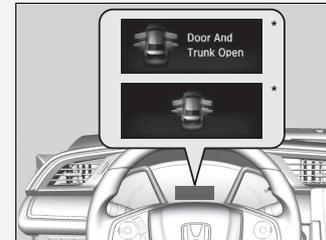
➤ **Door and Boot Open Indicator** P. 101



#### Models with driver information interface

If the door and/or boot open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the boot is not completely closed. Close all doors and the boot tightly until the message disappears.

➤ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages\*** P. 117



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The front passenger's\* and rear seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➔ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 78

### ⌘ About Your Seat Belts

The emergency locking retractor may lock if you lean forward too quickly. Slower movements will allow the belt to extend fully without locking.

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

### ▶▶ About Your Seat Belts

#### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a rear seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## Seat Belt Reminder



### ■ Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1 and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

### ⊗ Seat Belt Reminder

#### Models with front passenger seat belt reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

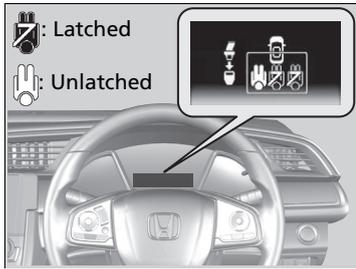
Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



### ■ Rear seats\*

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened or closed.
- Any of the rear passengers latches or unlatches their seat belt.

The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

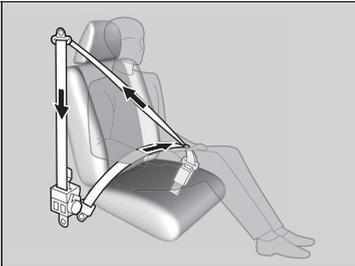
To see the display:

Press the  (display/information) button.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

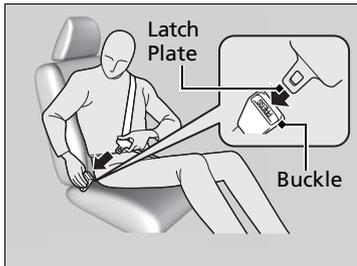
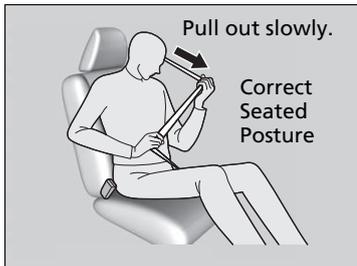
### Models with side curtain airbags

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➤ **Adjusting the Seats** P. 205



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

#### Fastening a Seat Belt

### **⚠ WARNING**

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

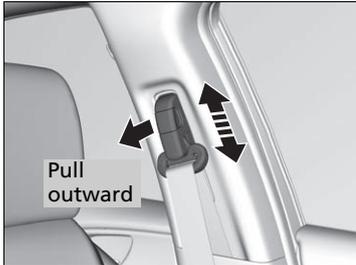
**Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.**

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is out of the way and will not get caught by closing the door.

## ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchor up and down while pulling the release outward.
2. Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

## ▣ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### ▶▶ Seat Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

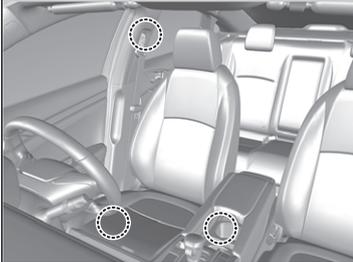
**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

## Anchorage Points

Front Seat  
Except Thai models



Front Seat  
Thai models



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.



The rear seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side\*, and side curtain airbags\* are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Models with side airbags

- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Models with side curtain airbags

- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the sensors, the airbag activators, the seat belt tensioners, and driver and front passenger\* seat belt. During a crash event the unit can record such information.

- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.

### Models without side airbags

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front impact.

### Models with side airbags

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you that the front passenger's side airbag has been turned off.

### Models with passenger front airbag off system

- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags\*:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags\*:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

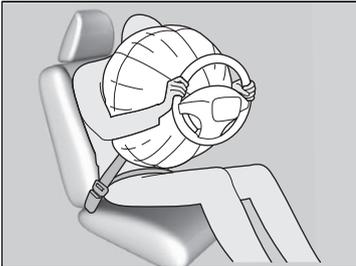
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** In a rollover, your best form of protection is a seat belt or, if your vehicle is equipped with a rollover sensor, both a seat belt and a side curtain airbag. Front airbags, however, are not designed to deploy in a rollover as they would provide little if any protection.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

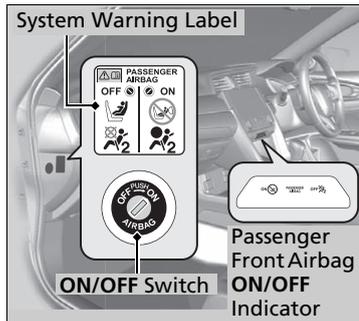
### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the ignition key.

### ■ Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

**OFF:** The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

**ON:** The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator is comes on and remain on for about 60 seconds.

### ■ To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



1. Set the parking brake, and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1. Remove the key.
2. Open the front passenger's door.
3. Insert the ignition key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
  - ▶ The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
4. Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ⊗ Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

### ⚠ WARNING

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

### ⚠ WARNING

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

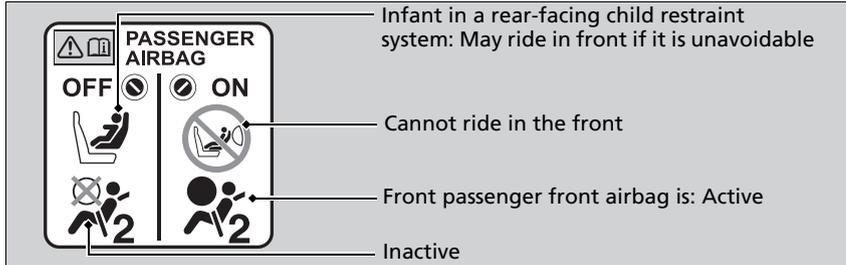
### ■ Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

### ■ Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ Passenger Front Airbag Off System\*

#### NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's ignition key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply excessive load on the ignition key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

#### ▶▶ Protecting Infants P. 69

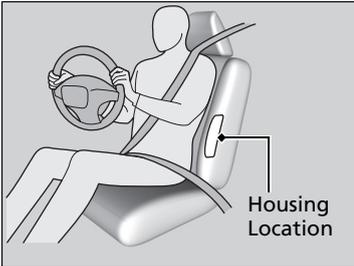
It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

## Side Airbags\*

The side airbags help to protect the upper torso of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

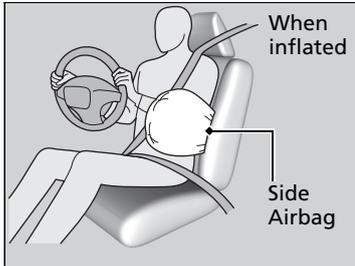
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

### Side Airbags\*

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

## Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag to not deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## Side Airbags\*

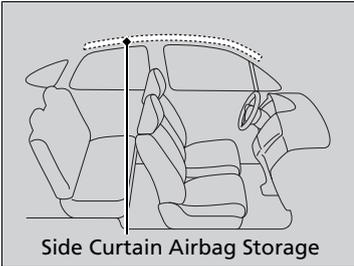
Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

\* Not available on all models

## Side Curtain Airbags\*

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

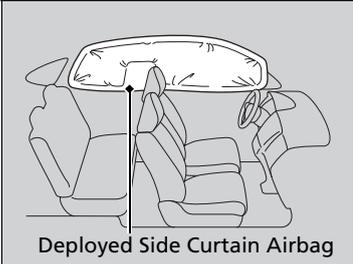
### Side Curtain Airbags\*

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## ■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

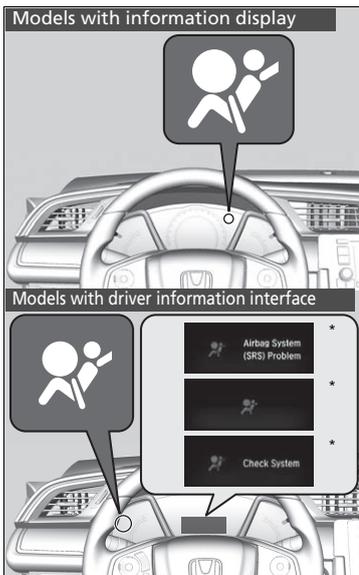
### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface\*.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the ignition switch is turned to ON \*1

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

#### **WARNING**

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

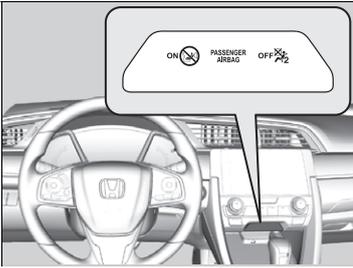
### ▶ Models with passenger front airbag off system

#### **WARNING**

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

## ■ Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator\*



### ■ When the passenger airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

### ▣ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

\* Not available on all models

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

#### **Malaysian models**

Child restraint systems must meet the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

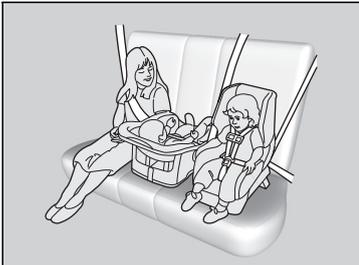
 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 72

#### **Except Malaysian models**

We recommend that child restraint systems meet the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries.

 **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 72

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag\* can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor

**⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belts and make sure any unused seat belts a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

**⚠ WARNING**



**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

► Protecting Child Passengers

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

► **Opening/Closing the Power Windows** P. 178

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

**Models with lockable retractor**

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazards and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

► **Safety Labels** P. 88

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.



### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

### ▶▶ Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN-ECE R94 Regulation:

#### ⚠ WARNING



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ✘ Protecting Infants

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system.

➡ **Passenger Front Airbag Off System** \* P. 58

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and within the weight range indicated by the child restraint system manufacturer, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ⚠ Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old, if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when not using the lower anchorage system. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX\* restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- Child restraint system is compliant with safety standard. We recommend the child restraint system with the UN-ECE R44 or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

Malaysian models

**The Recommended Child Restraint System**

Various types of child restraint systems are available. Not all types are suitable for your vehicle. Please refer to the table below to select which category of child restraint system can be used on each seating position.

Mass Group		Seating Position		
		Front Passenger	Rear Passenger	
			Rear Outboard	Rear Centre
group 0	Up to 10 kg	X	U	U
group 0+	Up to 13 kg	X	U or IL (Honda BABY SAFE ISOFIX, Honda ISOFIX Neo)	U
group I	9 kg to 18 kg	UF <sup>*1, *2</sup>	U or IUF (Size class A,B1,B) or IL <sup>*3</sup> (Honda ISOFIX Neo)	U
group II	15 kg to 25 kg	UF <sup>*1, *2</sup>	U	U
group III	22 kg to 36 kg	UF <sup>*1, *2</sup>	U	U

- U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- UF: Suitable for front facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
- IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in this list.
- IUF: Suitable for front facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
- X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
- \*1: Seat-back angle to the upright position (Front most lock position).
- \*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost position.
- \*3: Honda ISOFIX Neo is able to equipped for front facing.

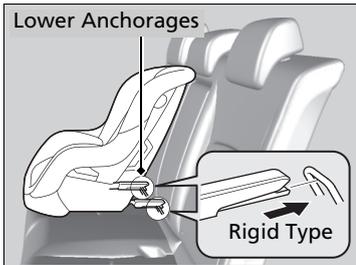
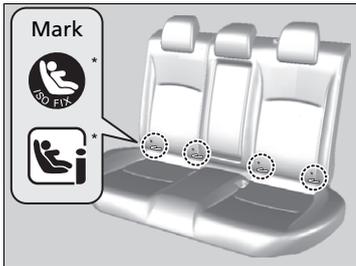
A size class is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the size class as indicated on the manufacturer’s instructions, package, and labels of the child restraint.

The particular child restraints in the table are Honda Genuine Parts. They are available from your dealer.

**For a correct installation, please refer to the Child Restraint Instruction Manual.**

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two rear outer seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the flexible or rigid type of connectors.



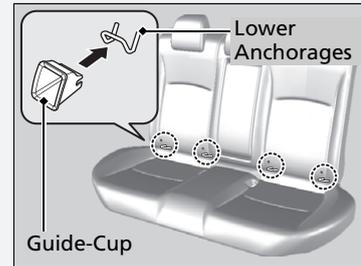
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

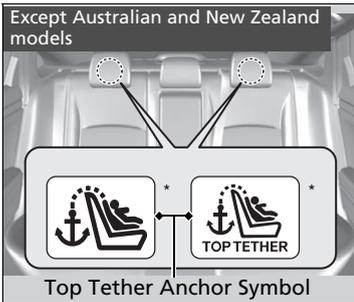
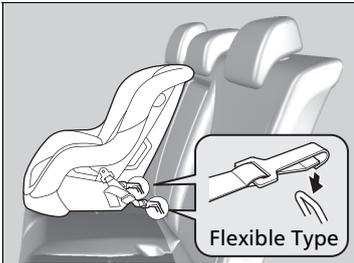
2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

- When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

## ▣ Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.





3. Open the tether anchorage cover behind the head restraint.

► Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

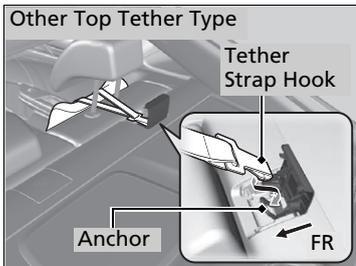
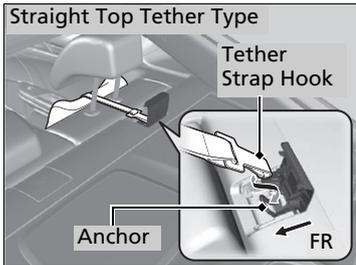
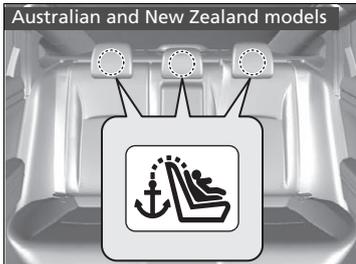
**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle. A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

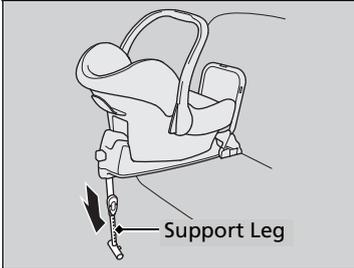
\* Not available on all models

Continued



**Child restraint system with tether strap**

4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
5. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled, the lockable retractor is activated, and the belt is fully retracted and locked.



Bangladeshi, Bhutanese, Fijian, Nepalese and Sri Lankan models

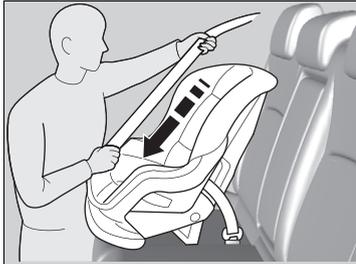
Child restraint system with support leg

4. Stretch the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



### Models with lockable retractor

3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract a few inches and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
  - ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 2 – 4.

## ▶▶ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

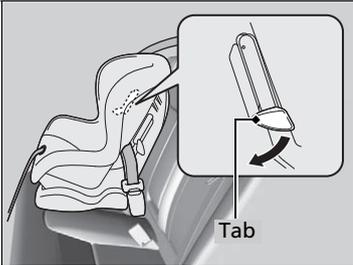
The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

- ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.



**Models without lockable retractor**

3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.

4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

- ▶ When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.

- ▶ When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

**Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt**

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

**Models with lockable retractor**

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



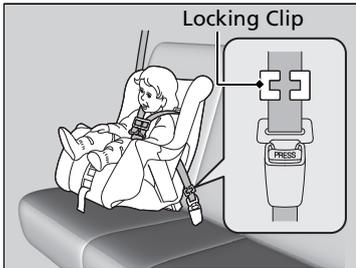
**All models**

6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

**Models without lockable retractor**

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

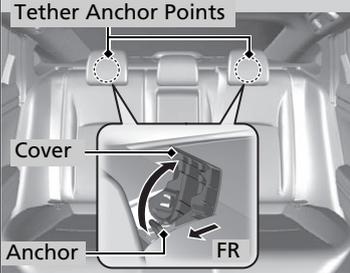
After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.



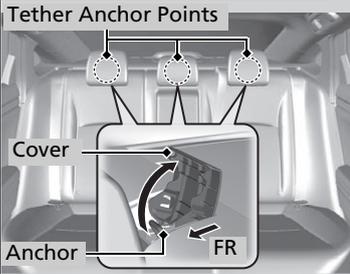
3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

## Adding Security with a Tether

Except Australian and New Zealand models



Australian and New Zealand models



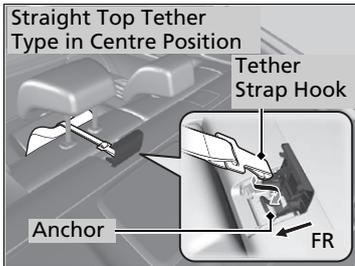
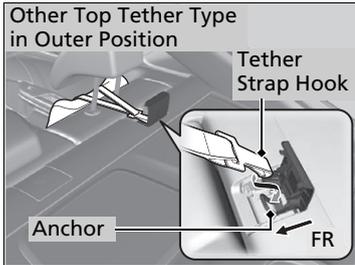
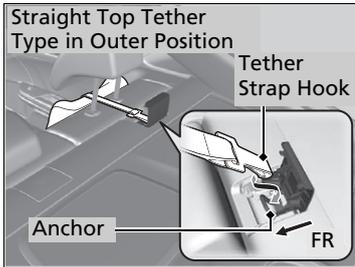
A tether anchorage point is provided behind each rear outer seating position or all rear seating positions. A child restraint system that is installed with a seat belt and comes with a tether can use the tether for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point and lift the cover.

### Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

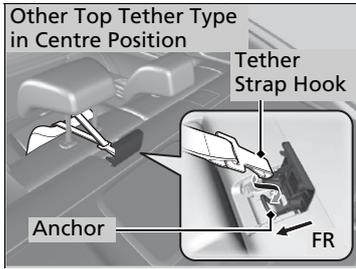
Always use a tether for forward facing child seats when using the seat belt or lower anchors.



**2.** Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage. Make sure the strap is not twisted.

**3.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.

**4.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.



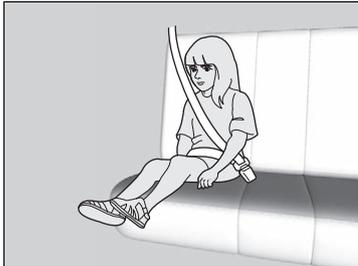
## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ▶ Safety of Larger Children

## ⚠ WARNING

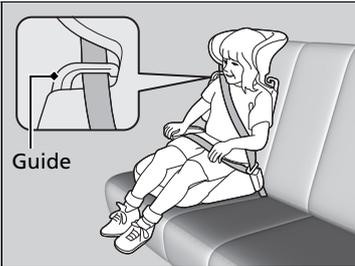
Allowing a child age 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A back-rest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the back-rest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the back-rest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

### Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

### ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the boot open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the boot open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### Carbon Monoxide Gas

## ⚠ WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

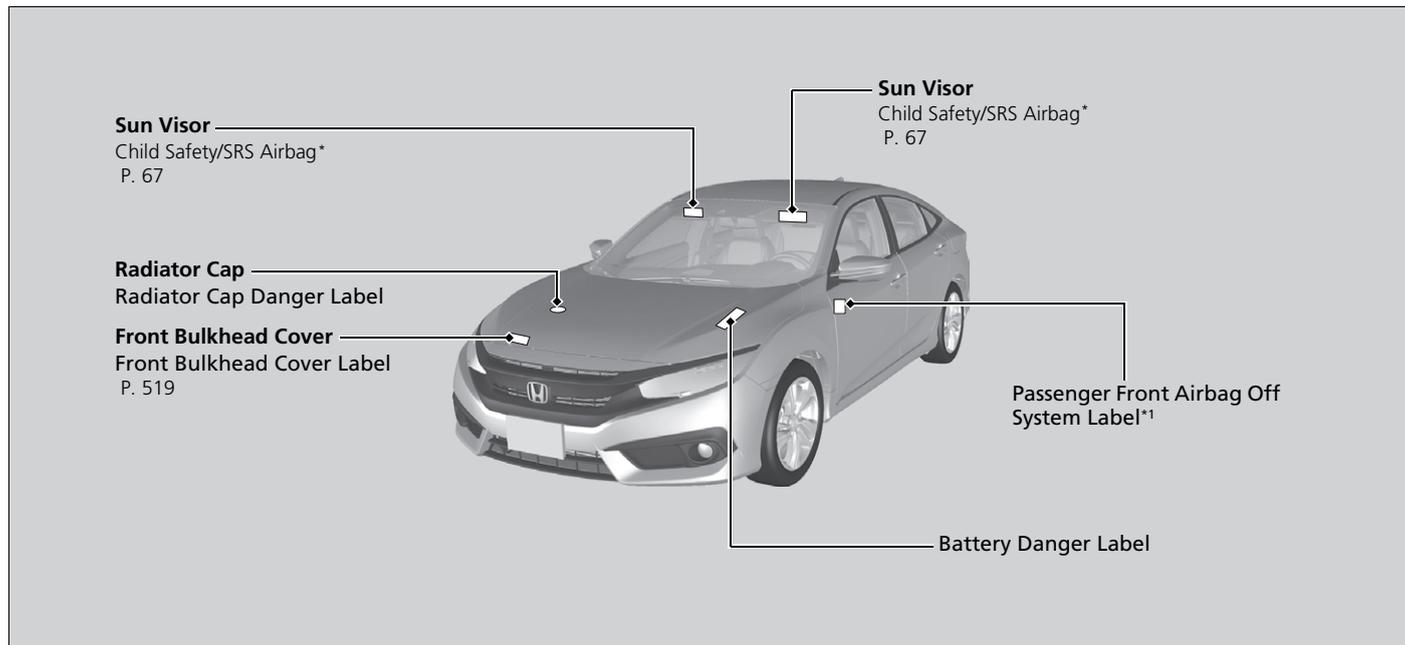
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\*1: Latin American models

# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



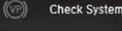
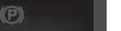
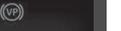
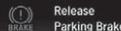
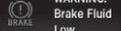
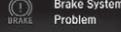
## **Indicators**

Information Display Warning and Information Messages* .....	116
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages* .....	117

## **Gauges and Displays**

Gauges .....	137
Information Display* .....	138
Driver Information Interface* .....	141

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off if the parking brake has been released.</li> <li>Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> <li>Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the ignition switch is in LOCK *1.</li> <li>Stays on for about 15 seconds when you turn the ignition switch to LOCK *1 while the electric parking brake is set.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do it comes on while driving</b> P. 584</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 584</li> </ul> </li> <li><b>Blinks and the brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time</b> - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on</b> P. 585</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*2</p>       </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*3</p>       </div> </div> <p style="text-align: right;">*4</p>   

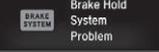
\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3:African models

\*4:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
 (Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><b>*2</b></p>    <p><b>*3</b></p>    </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p><b>*4</b></p>    </div> </div>

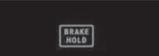
Instrument Panel

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3:African models

\*4:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*3</p>  </div>
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated.</li> </ul>	 <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471	—
	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.</li> <li> <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On</b> P. 582</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*3</p>  </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off either when the engine starts, or after several seconds if the engine did not start.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics of the emission control system.</li> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the engine for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer.   <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 583</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  Check System         </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  Emissions System Problem         </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*3</p>  </div>
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption.   <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 582</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  Check System         </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  12 Volt Battery Charging System Problem         </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*3</p>  </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Shift Lever Position Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift lever position.</li> </ul>	 <b>Shifting</b> P. 418,420	—
	Transmission System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> <div style="text-align: center;">  </div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*3</p>   </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	<b>M</b> (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.</li> <li>• Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	 <b>7-Speed Manual Shift Mode</b> P. 422	
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on and the beeper sounds* if you are not wearing a seat belt when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Models with front passenger seat belt reminder</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> </ul> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">All models</div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger* has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds* and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger* fasten their seat belts.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after you or the front passenger* has fastened the seat belt</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>  <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 43	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  Fasten Seat Belt         </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  Fasten Seat Belt         </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*3</p>  Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt         </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*4</p>  Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt         </div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">  </div>

Instrument Panel

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\* Not available on all models

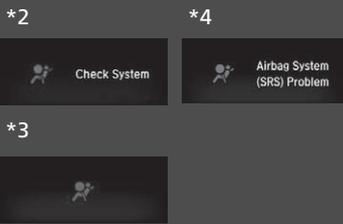
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Low Fuel Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 7.0 litres left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="text-align: center;">*2  Fuel Low</div> <div style="text-align: center;">*4  Fuel Low</div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between; margin-top: 10px;"> <div style="text-align: center;">*3  Check Fuel Gauge System</div> <div style="text-align: center;">*4  Fuel Gauge System Problem</div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">*3 </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">*3 </div>
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 473</p>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="text-align: center;">*2  Check System</div> <div style="text-align: center;">*4  Anti-Lock Brake System Problem</div> </div> <div style="margin-top: 10px;">*3 </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	<p>Supplemental Restraint System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system*</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system*</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

Instrument Panel

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
 ON  OFF	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off after a system check up.</li> </ul> <p>When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds.</p> <p>When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated.</p>	 <b>Passenger Front Airbag Off System</b> * P. 58	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b> P. 460</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*2</p>  Check System   Check System  <p>*3</p>    </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*4</p>  Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) Problem   Hill Start Assist Problem                 </div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*2</p>  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...  <p>*3</p>  </div> <div style="width: 45%;"> <p>*4</p>  Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...                 </div> </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

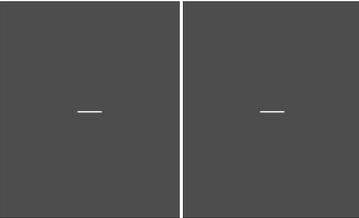
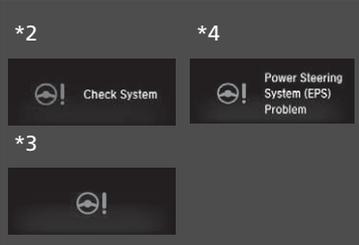
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when you deactivate VSA.</li> </ul>	 <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 461	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>*2</b></p>  <p>Vehicle Stability Assist OFF</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>*4</b></p>  <p>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF</p> </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>*3</b></p>  <p>OFF</p> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-between;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>*2</b></p>  <p>Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p><b>*4</b></p>  <p>Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...</p> </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p><b>*3</b></p>  </div>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Door and Boot Open Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if any door or the boot is not completely closed.</li> <li>The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if any door or the boot is opened while driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Goes off when all doors and boot are closed.</li> </ul>	
	Transmission Temperature Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the transmission fluid temperature is too high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place and move the shift position to .</li> </ul>	
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, and goes off when the engine starts.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly or does not come on at all</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 586</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1, then goes off.</li> <li>• May come on briefly if the ignition switch is turned to ON *1 and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the calibration process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on and stays on when:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been calibrated.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be calibrated.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Deflation Warning System Calibration</b> P. 465</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system, or when a compact spare tyre* is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	System Message Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• While the indicator is on, press the  (display/information) button to see the message again.</li> <li>• Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Respond to the message accordingly.</li> <li>• The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the  button is pressed.</li> </ul>	

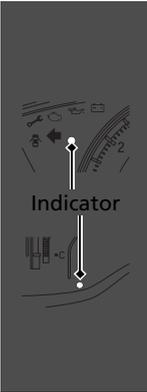
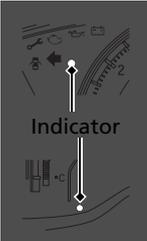
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blink when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>• If you press the hazard warning button, both indicators and all turn signals blink at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - A turn signal light bulb has blown. Change the bulb immediately.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> P. 532, 534, 535</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 475</li> </ul>	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in <b>AUTO*</b> when the exterior lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you remove the key from the ignition switch*<sup>1</sup> while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.</li> </ul>	—
	Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Light Control Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the light control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>	—

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b>*<sup>1</sup>, pull the key out, and then insert the key and turn it to ON <b>II</b>*<sup>1</sup> again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	—
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 176</p>	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Keyless Access System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you change the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	 <b>ECON Button</b> P. 424	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*1</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*3</p>  </div> </div> <div style="text-align: center; margin-top: 10px;"> <p>*2</p>  </div>

\*1: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: African models

\*3: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 425	—
	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 425	—
	Oil Monitor System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>*1</sup>, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li> </ul>	 <b>Oil Monitor System*</b> P. 503	—
	Cruise Main Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 428	—
	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the <b>LIM</b> button.</li> </ul>	 <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter*</b> P. 431	—

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Cruise Control and Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> <li>• Comes on when you have set a speed for adjustable speed limiter.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 429</li> <li>▶ <b>Adjustable Speed Limiter*</b> P. 432</li> </ul>	—
	Starter System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the starting system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal. Then manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—
	Rotate Wheel Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>	—
	Shift to Park Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks if you push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move the shift lever to <b>P</b>, then push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice.</li> </ul>	—

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Brake Depressing Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you turn the ignition switch to ON *<sup>1</sup>, then goes off.</li> </ul> <p><b>Electric Parking Brake System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 468</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
		<p><b>Automatic Brake Hold System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> <li>Blinks if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>	

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

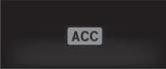
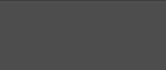
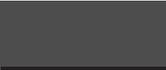
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*1</p>  <p>Check System</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>*2</p>  </div> </div>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 435</p>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 435</p>	

Instrument Panel

\*1: Except African models

\*2: African models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul>	
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> <li>Comes on when ACC with LSF is in operation, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. ACC with LSF cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437</li> <li>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li><b>Goes off</b> - The camera has been cooled down and the system activates normally.</li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message*
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> <li>Comes on when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> <li>Comes on when the area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*</b> P. 453</li> <li>Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li><b>Goes off</b> The camera has cooled down and the system activates normally.</li> <li> <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 435</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.</li> </ul>	

\*1:Except African models

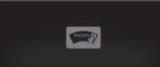
\*2:African models

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off.</li> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS.</li> <li>• Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS off</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.   <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*</b> P. 476</li> <li>• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	<div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div> <p>*1</p>  CMBS OFF                 </div> <div> <p>*2</p>  OFF                 </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div>  Check System                 </div> <div>  </div> </div> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; margin-top: 10px;"> <div> <p>*1</p>  Drive Carefully. Systems Initializing...                 </div> <div> <p>*2</p>  </div> </div>

\*1:Except African models

\*2:African models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message *
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 435</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul>	
			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera*</b> P. 435</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

\* Not available on all models

## Information Display Warning and Information Messages\*

The following messages appear only on the information display.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with keyless access system</p>		
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON, without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 187</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote's battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Keyless Remote*</b> P. 554</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages\*

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

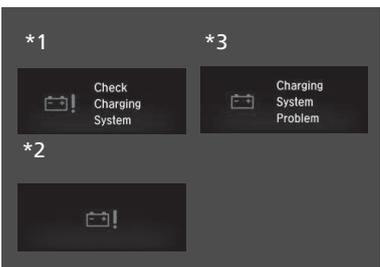
Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1, *2                      *3</p>  <p>Door And Trunk Open</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if any door or the boot is not completely closed.</li> <li>• Appears if any door or the boot is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Goes off when all doors and the boot are closed.</li> </ul>
<p>Models with parking sensor system</p> <p>*1                      *3</p>  <p>Check System                      Parking Sensor System Problem</p> <p>*2</p>  <p>Models with rearview camera system</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</li> <li>• If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

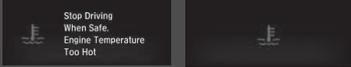
\* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> <li>• Appears along with the battery charging system indicator when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Checking the Battery</b> P. 551</li> </ul> </li> <li>• Turn off the climate control system and rear defogger to reduce electricity consumption.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 582</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

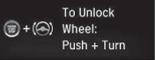
Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*2, *4                      *3</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Overheating</b> P. 579</p>
<p>*2, *3                      *4</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the ignition switch is in ON *1.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.</li> </ul>
<p>*2                              *4</p>  <p>*3</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the starting system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal. Then manually start the engine. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3:African models

\*4:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

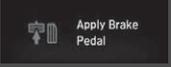
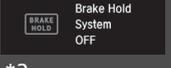
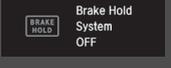
Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*2</p>  <p>To Unlock Wheel: Push + Turn</p> <p>*4</p>  <p>To Unlock Wheel: Push + Rotate</p> <p>*3</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>
<p>*2</p>  <p>Fasten Seat Belt</p> <p>*4</p>  <p>Fasten Seat Belt</p> <p>*3</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you turn the ignition switch to ON *1 without fastening the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.</li> </ul>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*3: African models

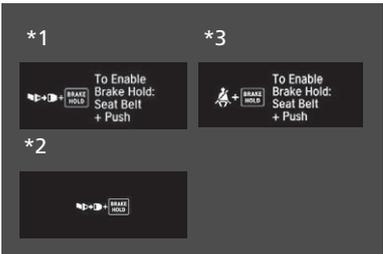
\*4: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1, *3                      *2</p>  	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the transmission fluid temperature is too high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place and move the shift position to <b>[P]</b>. Let the engine idle until the message disappears.</li> </ul>
<p>*1                              *3</p>   <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
<p>*1                              *3</p>   <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.</li> </ul>	<p> <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471</p>

\*1: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: African models

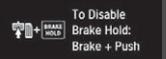
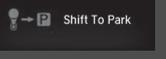
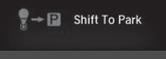
\*3: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>*1</p> <p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p> <p>*2</p> <p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p> <p>*3</p> <p>To Enable Brake Hold: Seat Belt + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fasten the driver's seat belt.                     <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: African models

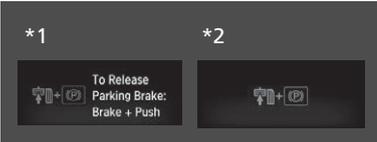
\*3: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1  *3 </p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1  *3 </p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Automatic Brake Hold</b> P. 471</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 468</li> </ul>
<p>*1  *3 </p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>[P]</b>.</li> <li>Appears when the engine stops without the shift lever in <b>[P]</b>, and does not restart automatically.</li> <li>Appears if you open the bonnet with Auto Idle Stop activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the shift lever to <b>[P]</b>, then push the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice.</li> <li>If you want to set the power mode to ON, move the shift lever to <b>[P]</b>.</li> <li>If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 408</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.   <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 468</li> </ul>

\*1: Except African models

\*2: African models

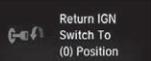
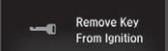
**Australian and New Zealand models**

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.</li> </ul>	 <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 43

**Models with speed alarm**

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.</li> </ul>	 <b>Speed Alarm*</b> P. 145

Models without keyless access system

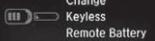
Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1  Return IGN Switch To (0) Position</p> <p>*3  Return Ignition Switch To Lock (0) Position</p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in ACCESSORY <b>I</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Turn the ignition switch to LOCK <b>0</b>, then remove the key.</li> </ul>
<p>*1  Accessory ( I ) Position</p> <p>*3  Accessory ( I ) Position</p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the ignition key is turned to ACCESSORY <b>I</b> from ON <b>II</b>. (The driver's door is closed.)</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
<p>*1  Ignition Key</p> <p>*3  Remove Key From Ignition</p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you open the driver's door while the ignition key is in LOCK <b>0</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Remove the key from the ignition switch.</li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Models with keyless access system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1</p>  <p>*3</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*3</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode on without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 187</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*3</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Replace the battery as soon as possible.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Keyless Remote*</b> P. 554</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

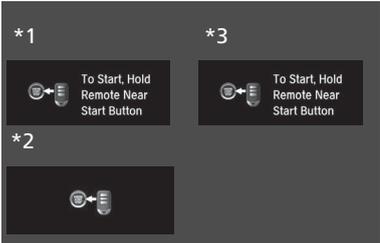
\* Not available on all models

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1</p>  <p>To Start Engine: Brake + Push</p> <p>*3</p>  <p>To Start Engine: Brake + Push</p> <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li> </ul>	<p>▶ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 411</p>
<p>*1</p>  <p>Accessory Mode</p> <p>*3</p>  <p>Accessory Mode</p> <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p>
<p>*1</p>  <p>To Turn Vehicle Off: Push Twice</p> <p>*3</p>  <p>To Switch Vehicle OFF: Push Twice</p> <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).</li> </ul>

\*1: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: African models

\*3: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>*1</p> <p>*2</p> <p>*3</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Bring the keyless remote in front of the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to be touched with.             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 573</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/+</b> button.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle in front of you starts moving while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Either press the <b>RES/+</b> button or <b>-/SET</b> button, or depress the accelerator pedal.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:African models

\*2:Except African models

\* Not available on all models

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1 </p> <p>*2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the shift lever is in any position other than <b>D</b> or <b>S</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1 </p> <p>*2 </p> <p></p> <p></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1 </p> <p>*2 </p> <p></p> <p></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>-/SET</b> button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:African models

\*2:Except African models

Models with ACC with LSF

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1  *2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 468</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1  *2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>–/SET</b> button while the parking brake is applied.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> <li>➤ <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 468</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1  *2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>–/SET</b> button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC with LSF cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<p>*1  *2 </p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if ACC with LSF is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
<p></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b>* P. 437</li> <li>➤ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b>* P. 476</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\*1:African models

\*2:Except African models

\* Not available on all models

Models with ACC with LSF

Message		Condition	Explanation
*1 	*2 	• Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation.	• ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437
*1 	*2 	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC.	• Reduce the speed, then set ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437
*1 	*2 	• Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.	• Reduce the speed, then reset ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437
*1 	*2 	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too low for you to set ACC.	• Raise the speed, then set ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437
*1 	*2 	• Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive low vehicle speed.	• Raise the speed, then reset ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)</b> * P. 437

\*1:African models

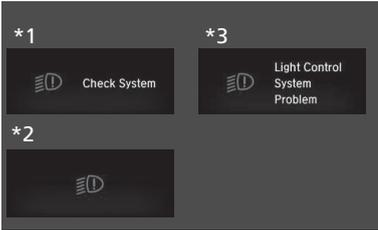
\*2:Except African models

Models with LKAS

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<p><b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)*</b> P. 453</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p><b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected <b>Warning Only</b></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected <b>Normal or Delayed</b></b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Road Departure Mitigation System*</b> P. 449</li> </ul> </li> <li>• You can change the setting for the road departure mitigation system. <b>Normal, Delayed, and Warning Only</b> can be selected.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Customized Features</b> P. 324</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

**Models with light control system**

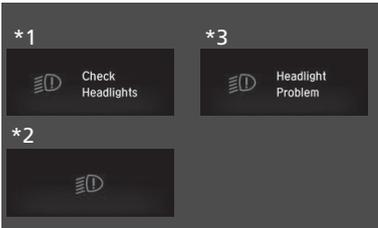
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the light control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

**Models with LED headlights**

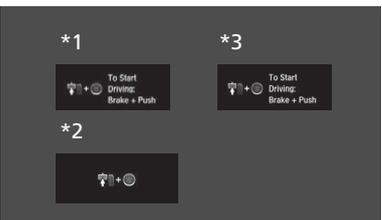
Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Models with remote engine starter

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you unlock and open the driver's door while the engine is running by remote engine start.</li> </ul>	<p><b>➤ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback* P. 413</b></p>

\*1: Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: African models

\*3: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Models with oil monitor system

Message	Condition	Explanation
<p>*1  Service Due Soon</p> <p>*2 </p> <p>*3  Maintenance Due Soon</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due soon.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>An early oil change is recommended.</li> </ul>
<p>*1  Service Due Now</p> <p>*2 </p> <p>*3  Maintenance Due Now</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the scheduled maintenance is due.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the engine oil.  <b>Oil Monitor System</b>* P. 503</li> </ul>
<p>*1  Service Over Due</p> <p>*2 </p> <p>*3  Maintenance Past Due</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the scheduled engine oil change is passed due.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the engine oil immediately.  <b>Oil Monitor System</b>* P. 503</li> </ul>

\*1:Except African, Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2:African models

\*3:Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, tachometer, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

### ■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

### ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

### ■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### » Fuel Gauge

##### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches  or . Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

#### » Temperature Gauge

##### NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

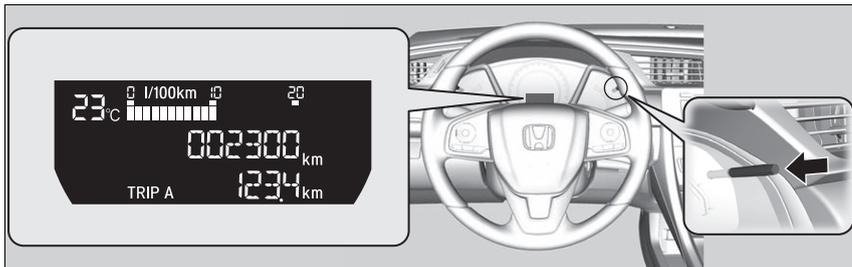
 **Overheating** P. 579

## Information Display\*

The information display shows the odometer, trip meter, engine oil life, and other gauges.

### Switching the Display

Press the  (TRIP) knob to change the display.

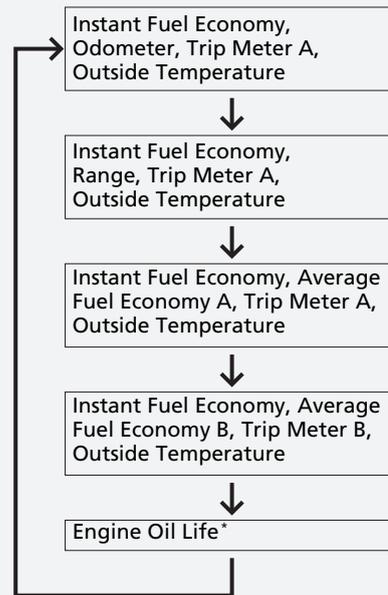


### Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

### Switching the Display

Each time you press the  knob, the information display changes as follows:



## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

## ■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

## ■ Engine Oil Life \*

Shows the remaining oil life.

 **Oil Monitor System**\* P. 503

## ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature indicator

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press and hold the  (TRIP) knob for 10 seconds or more while the outside temperature is shown on the information display.
  - The information display goes into temperature adjustment mode. The display starts showing from  $-3^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $+3^{\circ}\text{C}$ .
3. Release the  knob when the right adjustment amount is shown.
  - The adjustment is complete.

### » Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Driver Information Interface \*

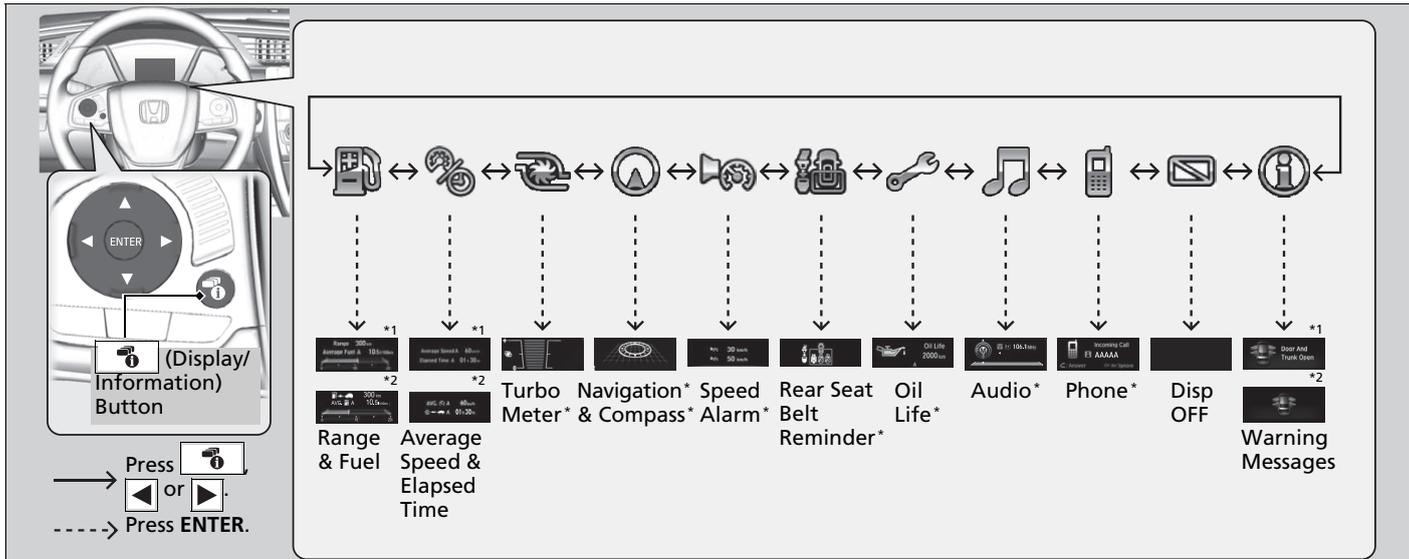
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### Switching the Display

#### Main displays

Press the  (display/information) button, and then press  or  to change the display. Press **ENTER** to see detailed information.



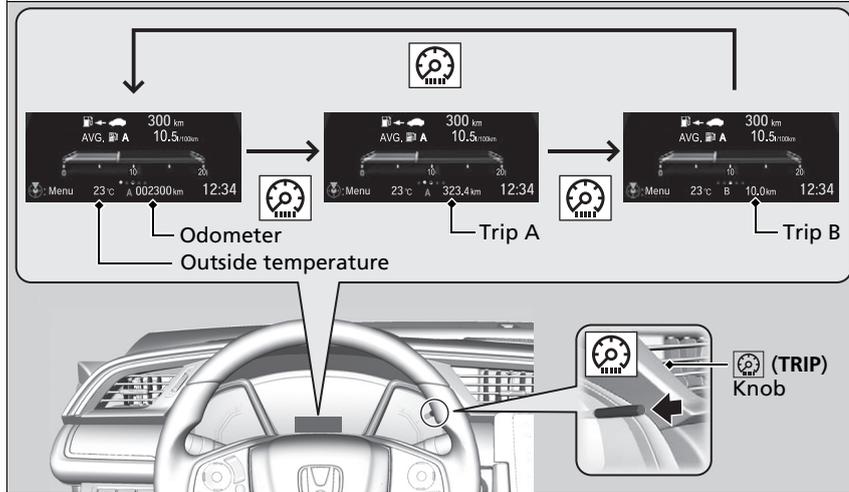
\*1: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Trip computer

Press the  (TRIP) knob to change display.



### ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

### ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ▶▶ Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the  knob.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the  knob. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

### ■ Average Fuel Economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in l/100 km or km/l. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.

### ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

### ■ Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in l/100 km or km/l.

### ■ Engine Oil Life\*

Shows the remaining oil life.

 **Oil Monitor System**\* P. 503

\* Not available on all models

#### ⌘ Average Fuel Economy

You can change when to reset the average fuel economy.

 **Customized Features** P. 324

#### ⌘ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

 **Customized Features** P. 324

#### ⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the elapsed speed.

 **Customized Features** P. 324

## ■ Rear Seat Belt Reminder\*

Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

## ■ Outside Temperature

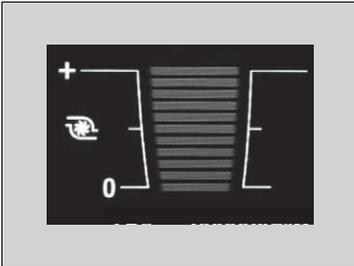
Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you turn the ignition switch to ON <sup>\*1</sup>, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

## ■ Turbo Meter\*



When the turbo charger is producing boost, this meter shows the boost pressure.

## ▶▶ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the audio/information screen's customized features to correct the temperature.

 **Customized Features** P. 324

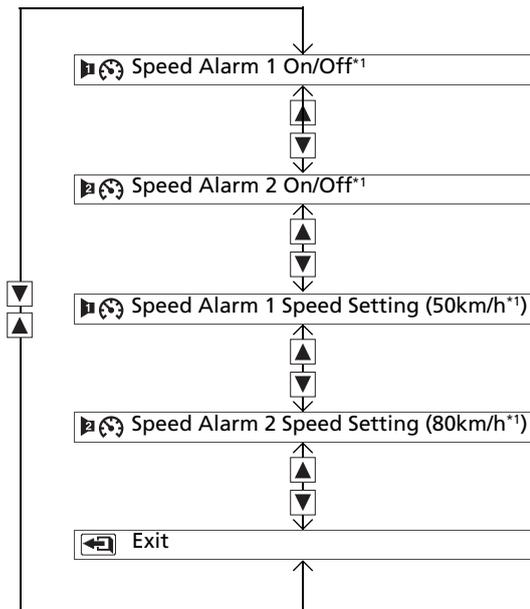
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Speed Alarm \*

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Each time you press the ▲/▼ button, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



\*1: Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions \*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Audio \*

Show the current audio information.

➤ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 263

## ■ Phone \*

Show the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 378

## ☞ Turn-by-Turn Directions \*

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.



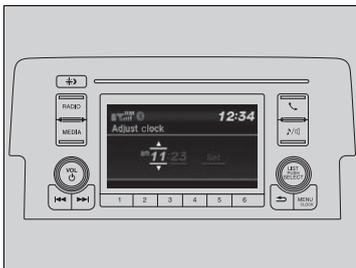
<b>Clock</b> .....	148	Security System Alarm.....	176	Brightness Control.....	199
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>		<b>Opening and Closing the Windows</b> .....	178	Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* .....	201
Key Types and Functions .....	150	<b>Opening and Closing the Sunroof*</b> .....	182	Button .....	201
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength* .....	152	<b>Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel</b>		Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	202
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside .....	153	Ignition Switch* .....	184	<b>Adjusting the Mirrors</b>	
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside .....	162	ENGINE START/STOP Button* .....	185	Interior Rearview Mirror .....	203
Childproof Door Locks .....	163	Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison .....	188	Power Door Mirrors .....	204
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* .....	164	Turn Signals .....	189	<b>Adjusting the Seats</b> .....	205
Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting* .....	165	Light Switches.....	190	<b>Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items</b>	
<b>Opening and Closing the Boot</b> .....	172	Fog Lights* .....	193	Interior Lights .....	213
<b>Security System</b>		Headlight Adjuster* .....	194	Interior Convenience Items .....	215
Immobilizer System .....	175	Daytime Running Lights .....	195	<b>Climate Control System</b>	
		Wipers and Washers .....	196	Using Automatic Climate Control ....	223
				Automatic Climate Control Sensors .....	229

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the ignition switch in ON \*1.

### Adjusting the Time



#### Models with colour audio system

##### Using the MENU/CLOCK button

1. Press and hold the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
  - ▶ **Adjust clock** is selected.
2. Rotate  to change hour, then press .
3. Rotate  to change minute, then press .
4. To enter the selection, rotate  and select **Set**, then press .

#### Adjusting the Clock

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 324

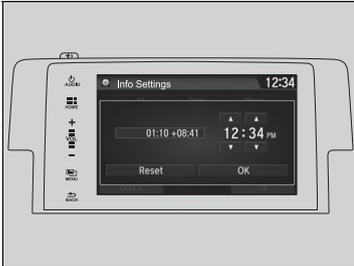
You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.

#### Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.  
Press  to enter.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.



#### Models with Display Audio

### ■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
4. Select  or  to change hour.
5. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

#### ▶▶ Adjusting the Clock

##### Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

You can customize the clock display.

#### ▶ Customized Features P. 324

The clock is automatically updated when your smartphone is connected to the audio system.

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display.

1. Touch the clock on the display for a few seconds.
2. Select **Clock Adjustment**.
3. Select  or  to change hour.
4. Select  or  to change minute, then select **OK**.

## Key Types and Functions

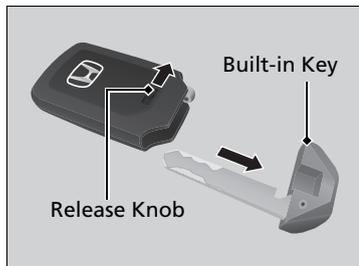
This vehicle comes with the following keys:

### Keys



Use the key to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors. You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock the doors and to open the boot.

### Keyless remote\*



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

### Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

#### Immobilizer System P. 175

Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the engine may not start, and the remote transmitter may not work.

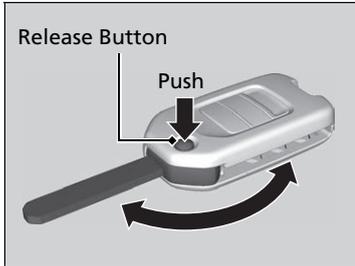
If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

### Models with remote engine starter

You can remotely start the engine using the remote engine start.

#### Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback\* P. 413

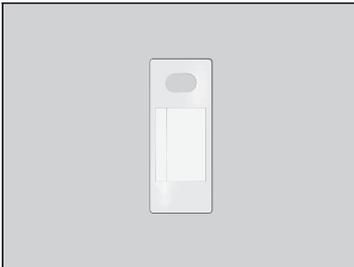
### ■ Retractable keys\*



The key folds up inside the remote transmitter.

1. Press the release button to release the key out from the transmitter.
  - ▶ Make sure to fully extend the key.
2. To close the key, press the release button then push the key inside the transmitter until you hear a click.

### ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

### ☒ Retractable keys\*

If the key is not fully extended, the immobilizer system may not work properly, and the engine may not start. Avoid contact with the key whenever it extends or retracts.

### ☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors, opening the boot, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors or opening the boot or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

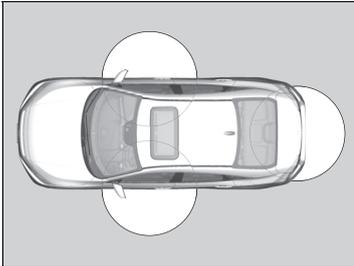
- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, notebook computers, mobile phones, or wireless machines.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

### ▶▶ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength\*

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote battery. The keyless remote battery lasts about two years. This changes by how often you use the remote. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

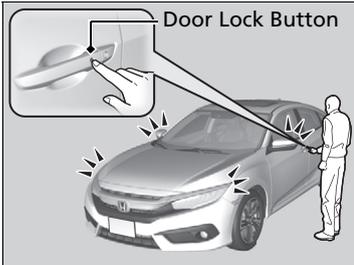
## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System\*



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the boot. You can lock/unlock the doors within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle. You can open the boot within about 80 cm radius from the boot release button.

### ■ Locking the vehicle



Press the door lock button on a front door.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash: the beeper sounds: all the doors lock; and the security system sets.

### ▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior lights come on when you press the unlock button.

No doors opened: The lights fade out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked with the remote: The lights go off immediately.

➤ **Interior Lights** P. 213

### ▣ Using the Keyless Access System\*

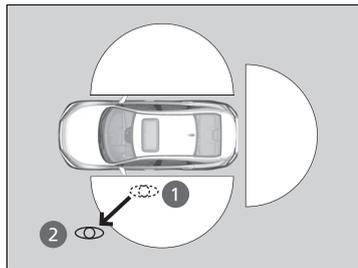
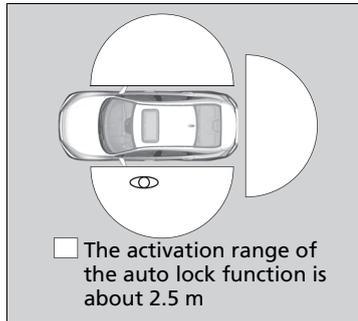
If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

\* Not available on all models



**■ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock\*)**

When you walk away from the vehicle while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 2.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 2.5 m radius of the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
  - ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors will then lock.

**▶▶ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock\*)**

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

**▶▶ Customized Features P. 324**

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

When all doors have been closed and the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, or if the keyless remote is not detected within about 2.5 m of the vehicle, auto lock function will not be activated.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:  
Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.  
▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

#### ⌘ Locking the vehicle (Walk away auto lock\*)

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

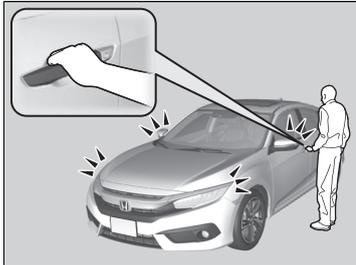
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 2.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

#### **Auto lock function operation stop beeper**

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
  - You are located too close to the vehicle.
  - The keyless remote is put inside the boot.
- If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.

## ■ Unlocking the vehicle



### African and Latin American models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ The driver's door unlocks.
- ▶ Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice.

Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- ▶ All the doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice.

### Except African and Latin American models

Grab the driver's door handle:

- ▶ All the doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice and the beeper sounds.

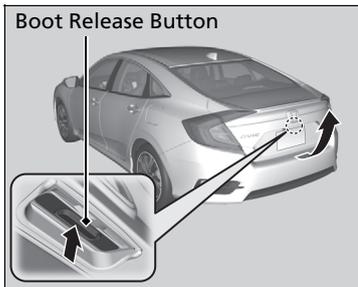
### ▶▶ Using the Keyless Access System\*

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

If you do not open a door within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle, the doors will automatically relock.

The light flash, beep, and unlock settings can be customized.

▶▶ **Customized Features** P. 324



Grab the front passenger's door handle:

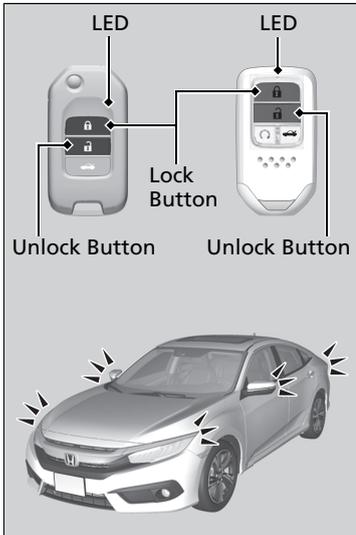
- ▶ All the doors unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights and indicators flash twice and the beeper sounds.

Press the boot release button:

- ▶ The boot unlocks and opens.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice and the beeper sounds.

🔍 **Using the Boot Release Button** P. 172

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors

Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash, all the doors lock, and the security system sets.

## ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

### Models without keyless access system

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

### Models with keyless access system

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter or keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### All models

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

## ■ Unlocking the doors

### African and Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

#### Once:

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, and the driver's door unlocks.

#### Twice:

- ▶ The remaining doors unlock.

### Except African and Latin American models

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash twice, the indicators flash twice, and all the doors unlock.

### ⌘ Using the Remote Transmitter

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

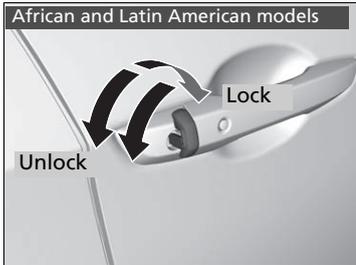
- **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 553

You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

- **Customized Features** P. 324

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the keyless remote battery or the vehicle battery is dead, use the key instead of the keyless remote.



Fully insert the key and turn it.



## ▶▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

### Latin American models

When you lock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turn the key a second time within a few seconds to unlock the remaining doors.

### African models

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors.

### Except African and Latin American models

When you lock/unlock the driver's door with a key, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

### Models with driver information interface

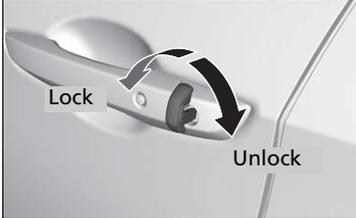
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

### Except Latin American models

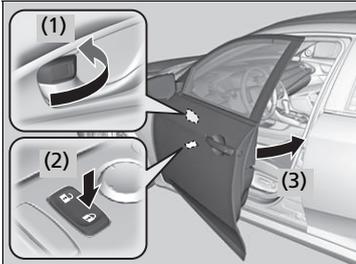
Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the remote transmitter.

Cambodian, Laotian Philippine and Vietnamese models



### ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the remote key on you, or if the battery of the remote key is dead, you can lock the doors without a key.



#### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward (1) or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction (2), then pull and hold the outside door handle (3). Close the door, then release the handle.

- ▶ The doors cannot be locked when the key is in the ignition switch\*, or the keyless remote\* is inside the vehicle.

#### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

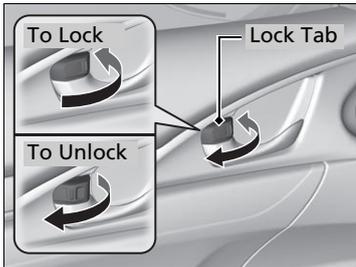
#### ▶ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors lock at the same time. Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

### ■ Using the Lock Tab



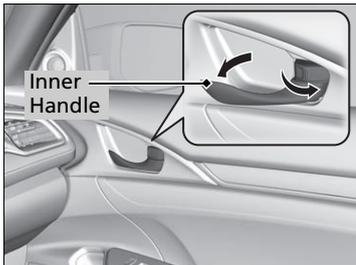
■ **Locking a door**  
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**  
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ▶▶ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

### ■ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



**African models**  
Pull the front door inner handle.  
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

**Except African models**  
Pull the driver's door inner handle.  
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### ▶▶ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

#### **African models**

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

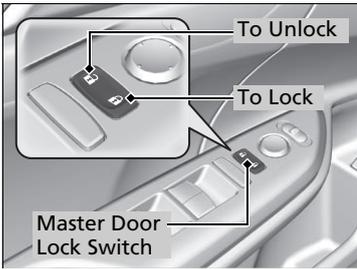
#### **Except African models**

The driver's door inner handle are designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

▶ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 163

**Using the Master Door Lock Switch**



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all doors.

☒ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors lock/unlock at the same time.

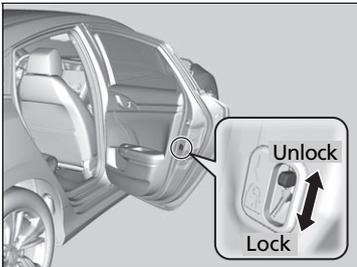
**Childproof Door Locks**

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

**Setting the Childproof Door Locks**



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

**When opening the door**

Open the door using the outside door handle.

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

Your vehicle locks all doors or unlocks all doors/the driver's door automatically when a certain condition is met.

### ■ Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

### ■ Auto Door Unlocking

#### ■ Park unlock mode

**African and Latin American models**

The driver's door unlocks when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

**Except African and Latin American models**

All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

### ▶▶ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the master door lock switch.

▶ **Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting\*** P. 165

### **Models with Display Audio**

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 324

## Customizing the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Setting\*

You can customize the auto door locking/unlocking setting to your liking using the master door lock switch.

### List of the Auto Door Locking/Unlocking Customizable Options

African and Latin American models

#### Auto door locking

Mode	Description
Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
Park Lock Mode	All doors lock when the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b> .
Off	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

#### Auto door unlocking

Mode	Description	
Park Unlock Mode	To unlock driver's door* <sup>1</sup>	Driver's door unlock when the shift lever is moved into <b>P</b> .
	To unlock all doors	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into <b>P</b> .
Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	To unlock driver's door	Driver's door unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .
	To unlock all doors	All doors unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .
Off	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.	

\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Except African and Latin American models

■ **Auto door locking**

Mode	Description
<b>Drive Lock Mode</b> * <sup>1</sup>	All doors lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.
<b>Park Lock Mode</b>	All doors lock when the shift lever is moved out of <b>P</b> .
<b>Off</b>	The auto door locking is deactivated all the time.

■ **Auto door unlocking**

Mode	Description
<b>Park Unlock Mode</b> * <sup>1</sup>	All doors unlock when the shift lever is moved into <b>P</b> .
<b>Ignition Switch Unlock Mode</b>	All doors unlock when the ignition switch is moved out of ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .
<b>Off</b>	The auto door unlocking is deactivated all the time.

## ■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Locking Options

Steps	Drive Lock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Park Lock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> <sup>2</sup> .		
4	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—	—
5	<p>Press and hold the lock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice.</p> 		Press and hold the lock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear one click.
6	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to OFF <sup>2</sup> within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.		

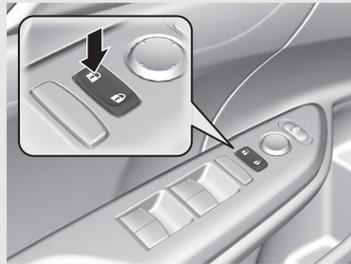
\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

African and Latin American models

Steps	Park Unlock Mode		Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Off
	To unlock driver's door* <sup>1</sup>	To unlock all doors Off	To unlock driver's door	To unlock all doors Off	
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .				
2	Close the driver's door.				Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .				
4	—	—	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.		—
5	Press and hold the unlock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice.				



\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Steps	Park Unlock Mode		Ignition Switch Unlock Mode		Off
	To unlock driver's door* <sup>1</sup>	To unlock all doors Off	To unlock driver's door	To unlock all doors Off	
6	Release the switch.	Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.	Keep pressing the switch for another five seconds to hear one more click.	Release the switch.
7	—	—	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .		—
8	Turn the ignition switch to OFF* <sup>2</sup> within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.				

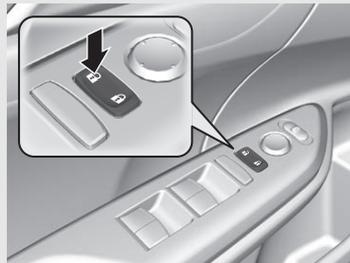
\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Customizing Flow for Auto Door Unlocking Options

Except African and Latin American models

Steps	Park Unlock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	Off
1	Apply the parking brake. Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .		
2	Close the driver's door.		Open the driver's door.
3	Turn the ignition switch to ON <b>II</b> * <sup>2</sup> .		
4	—	Move the shift lever out of <b>P</b> with the brake pedal depressed.	—
5	Press and hold the unlock button of the master door lock switch on the driver's door for more than five seconds. Release the switch after you hear a click twice.		



\*1: Default setting

\*2: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Steps	Park Unlock Mode* <sup>1</sup>	Ignition Switch Unlock Mode	Off
6	—	Move the shift lever to <b>P</b> .	—
7	Turn the ignition switch to OFF* <sup>2</sup> within 20 seconds. ▶ Customization is completed.		

\*1:Default setting

\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Boot

### ■ Opening the boot

Open the boot all the way.

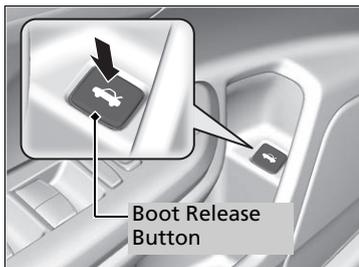
- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the boot lid may begin to close under its own weight.

### ■ Closing the boot

Keep the boot lid closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
- **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 87

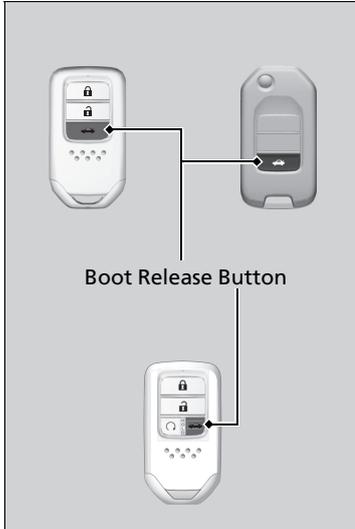
## Using the Boot Release Button



Pressing the boot release button on the driver's door.

- **When You Cannot Open the Boot** P. 601

## Using the Remote Transmitter\*



Press the boot release button for approximately one second to unlock and open the boot.

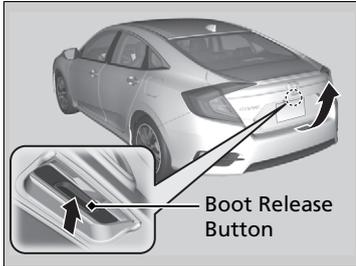
### ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter\*

#### Models with keyless access system

If the driver's door is locked, the boot will automatically lock when you close it. Otherwise, you will have to lock it manually.

\* Not available on all models

## Using the Boot Release\*



Push up the release button on the boot lid after the doors are unlocked.

Even if the boot is locked, you can open the boot if you are carrying the keyless remote.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

### ⌘ Using the Boot Release\*

- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the boot and close the lid. If you forget the remote inside, a beeper will sound and the boot will not close.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the boot while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not carry the keyless remote near the boot lid when closing it.
- Do not place the keyless remote around the rear seat when closing the boot.

## Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when inserting the key into the ignition switch or selecting the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the ignition switch or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the ignition switch\* or the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\*.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic devices such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

### Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your engine, contact a dealer.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

\* Not available on all models

## Security System Alarm

### Except Latin American models

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

### Latin American models

The security system alarm activates when the boot, bonnet, or doors are opened without the key, or remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and the some exterior lights flash when:

#### Except Latin American models

- The boot, bonnet or doors are opened without the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

#### Latin American models

- The boot, bonnet or doors are opened without the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

#### Except Latin American models

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter, keyless access system\*, or turning the ignition switch to ON **[II]**\*1. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

#### Latin American models

Unlock the vehicle using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ►► Security System Alarm

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the boot with the boot release or the emergency boot opener.

#### Except Latin American models

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system\*.

#### Latin American models

If the 12-volt battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the 12-volt battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

## ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The ignition switch is in LOCK **0**\*1, and the key has been removed from the ignition switch.
- The bonnet and boot are closed.
- All doors are locked with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system\*.

## ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks. When the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds, the security system alarm is set.

## ■ To cancel the security system alarm

### Except Latin American models

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter, keyless access system\*, or the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

### Latin American models

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the key, remote transmitter, keyless access system, or the ignition switch is turned to ON **II**\*1. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ▶▶ Security System Alarm

Do not attempt to alter this system or add another device to it.

### Except Latin American models

Do not unlock the door using the key. The security system alarm goes off.

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the ignition switch is in ON <sup>\*1</sup>, using the switches on the doors. The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows.

The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

## **WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch to LOCK <sup>\*1</sup>. Opening either front door cancels this function.

### Australian and New Zealand models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch off<sup>\*1</sup>. Opening either front door cancels this function.

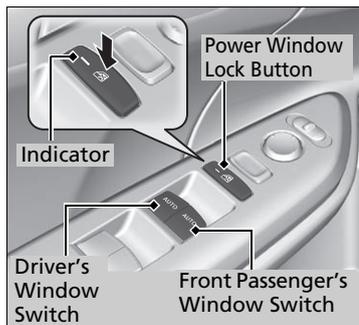
### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it stops closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

## Opening/Closing Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

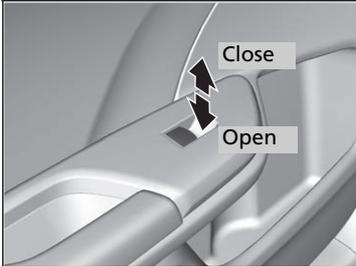
### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function

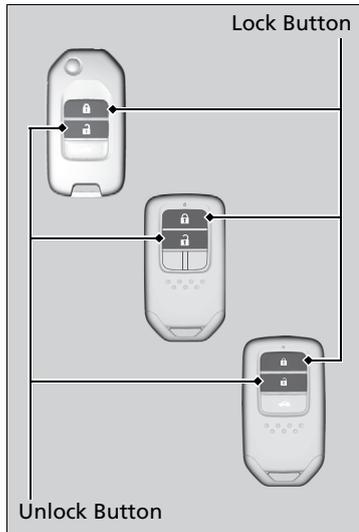


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## ■ Opening Windows and Sunroof\* with the Remote\*

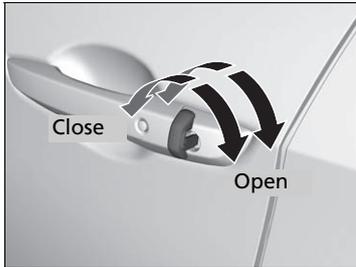


**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed.

**To close\*:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and keep it pressed.

If the windows and sunroof\* stop midway, repeat the procedure.

## ■ Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Key\*



**To open\*:** Unlock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the unlock direction and hold it there.

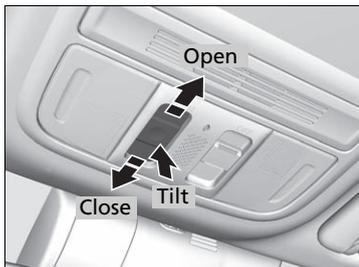
**To close:** Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and sunroof\* at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can operate the sunroof only when the ignition switch is in ON \*1. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.



### Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, push the switch briefly.

### Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

### **WARNING**

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone (with other occupants).

### **NOTICE**

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

The power sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you turn the ignition switch off\*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

### **Australian and New Zealand models**

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you turn the ignition switch off\*1. Opening either front door cancels this function.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Tilting the sunroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

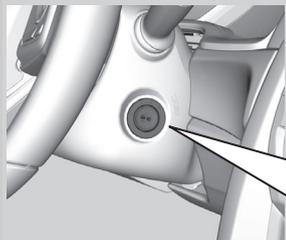
#### ☒ Opening/Closing the Sunroof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

- ☒ **Opening Windows and Sunroof\* with the Remote\*** P. 180
- ☒ **Opening/Closing the Windows and Sunroof\* with the Key\*** P. 181

## Ignition Switch\*



- 0 LOCK:** Insert and remove the key in this position.
- I ACCESSORY:** Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.
- II ON:** This is the position when driving.
- III START:** This position is for starting the engine. The switch returns to ON **II** when you let go of the key.

### Ignition Switch\*

You cannot take the key out unless the shift lever is in **P**.

If you open the driver's door when the key is in LOCK **0** or ACCESSORY **I**, a warning buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key out.

When this happens, the following messages appear on the driver information interface\*:

- In LOCK **0**:  or the symbol with a **REMOVE KEY**
- In ACCESSORY **I**:  or the symbol with a **RETURN IGNITION SWITCH TO LOCK (0) POSITION**

The buzzer will stop when you take the key out. If the key won't turn from LOCK **0** to ACCESSORY **I**, turn the key while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the key to turn.

## ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

### ■ Changing the Power Mode

**VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**  
The button is off.  
The steering wheel is locked. The power to all electrical components is turned off.  
Blinking in white (When the door is opened).

**ACCESSORY**  
The button blinks (in red).  
Operate the audio system and other accessories in this position.

**ON**  
The button blinks (in red).  
All electrical components can be used.

**Without pressing the brake pedal**

➔ Press the button without the shift lever in **P**.

➔ Shift to **P**, then press the button.

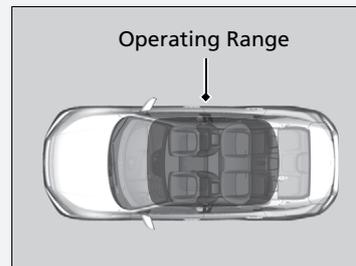
➔ Press the button.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

### ⊠ ENGINE START/STOP Button\*

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range



You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.  
The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to a door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is in red when the engine is running.

If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

☑ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 573

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the shift lever in **P** (Continuously Variable Transmission) and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid the battery drain.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning buzzer sounds.

## Keyless Remote Reminder

### Models with information display



### Models with driver information interface



Warning buzzers may sound from inside or/ and outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it to be within its operational range.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

### Keyless Remote Reminder

When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

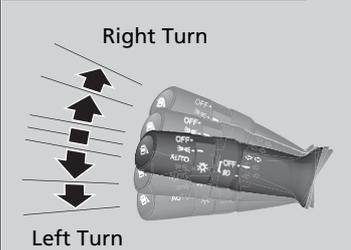
## Ignition Switch and Power Mode Comparison

Ignition Switch Position	LOCK (0) (with/without the key) 	ACCESSORY (I) 	ON (II) 	START (III) 
Without Keyless Access System	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li> <li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>• No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off.</li> <li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Normal key position while driving.</li> <li>• All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use this position to start the engine.</li> <li>• The ignition switch returns to the ON (II) position when you release the key.</li> </ul>
Power Mode	VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) 	ACCESSORY 	ON   Button is: <b>Blinking</b> <b>On</b>	START 
With Keyless Access System and <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> Button	Button-Off <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off and power is shut down.</li> <li>• The steering wheel is locked.</li> <li>• No electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	Button-Blinking <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Engine is turned off.</li> <li>• Some electrical components such as the audio system and the accessory power socket can be operated.</li> </ul>	Button-Blinking (engine is turned off) On (engine is running) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All electrical components can be used.</li> </ul>	Button-On <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The mode automatically returns to ON after the engine starts.</li> </ul>

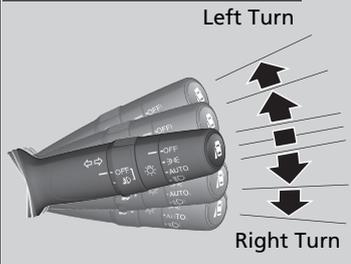
## Turn Signals

Left-hand drive type

Right-hand drive type for African



Right-hand drive type except for African



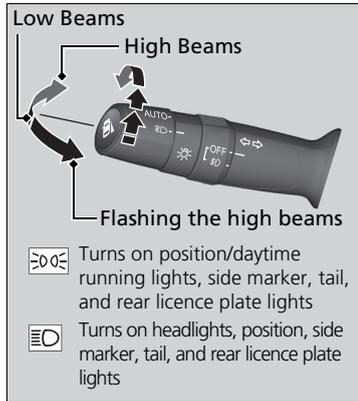
The turn signals can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times. This feature can be used when signaling for a lane change.

## Light Switches

### Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting or position of the ignition switch.

#### High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

#### Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

#### Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

#### Lights off

Turn the lever to OFF either when:

- The shift lever is in **P**. (Continuously Variable Transmission models)
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to OFF to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The shift lever is moved out of **P**. (Continuously Variable Transmission models)
- The parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Light Switches

#### Models with keyless access system

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

#### Models without keyless access system

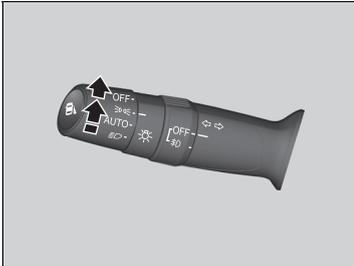
If you remove the key from the ignition switch while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

#### Lights On Indicator P. 104

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

### Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

- ▶ You can change the auto light sensitivity setting.
  - ▣ **Customized Features** P. 324

\* 1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

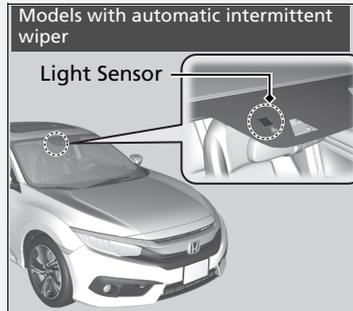
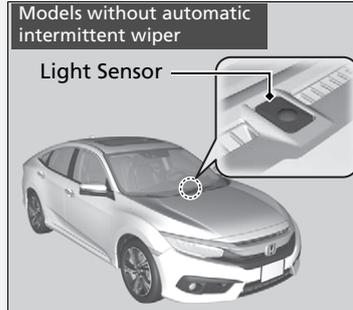
\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



### ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers\*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

### ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature\*

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off within 15 seconds after you remove the key or set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

- ▶ You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 324

If you turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1 with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (three minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### 🔧 Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

Adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at
Max	 Bright
High	
Mid	
Low	
Min	

🔧 **Customized Features** P. 324

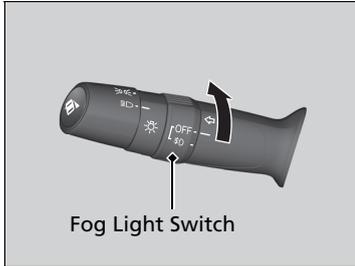
### 🔧 Headlight Integration with Wipers\*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

## Fog Lights\*



Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

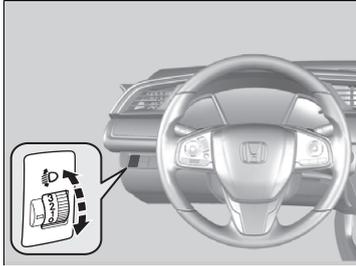
### ☒ Fog Lights\*

When the fog lights are on, the indicator in the instrument panel will be on. They go off when the headlights turned off, or when the daytime running lights are turned on.

➤ **Daytime Running Lights** P. 195

\* Not available on all models

## Headlight Adjuster\*



You can adjust the vertical angle of the low beam headlights when the ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

Turn the adjustment dial to select an appropriate angle for the headlights.

The larger dial number indicates the lower angle.

### ■ To select the adjustment dial position

Refer to the below table for the appropriate dial position for your vehicle's riding and loading conditions.

Condition	Dial position
A driver	0
A driver and a front passenger	
Five persons in the front and rear seats	1
Five persons in the front and rear seats and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	2
A driver and luggage in the boot, within the limits of maximum permissible axle weight and maximum permissible vehicle weight	3

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ▶▶ Headlight Adjuster\*

#### ▶▶ Models with automatic headlight adjuster system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

#### ▶▶ Models with halogen headlights

The headlights are suitable for left hand drive and right hand drive, without the need to make any adjustments or masking, as per UN Regulation No. 48 Dover Regulation.

#### ▶▶ Australian and South African models with LED headlight

You may need to alter the headlight beam distribution.

▶▶ **Adjusting Headlight Distribution** P. 467

## Daytime Running Lights

---

The position lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

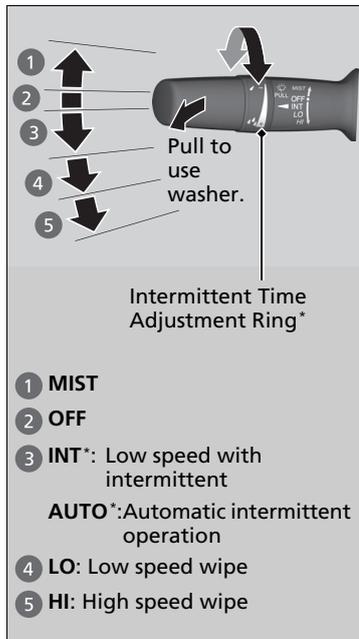
- The ignition switch is in ON \*1.
- The headlight switch is off.

Turning off the ignition switch\*1 will turn off the daytime running lights.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Wipers and Washers

### ■ Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

#### ■ MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT\*, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

#### ■ AUTO\*

➔ **Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*** P. 198

#### ■ Adjusting wiper operation\*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper delay.



Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

### » Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen. Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

#### Models with adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens. When the vehicle starts moving, the wipers make a single sweep. When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting and the **LO** setting become the same.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### » Wipers and Washers

#### All models

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

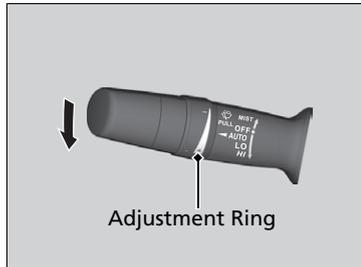
The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or LOCK **0**\*1, then remove the obstacle.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windshield wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

### ■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

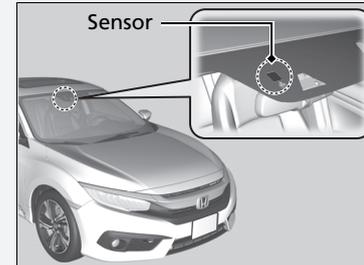
When in **AUTO**, you can also adjust the rainfall sensor sensitivity using the intermittent time adjustment ring.

### Sensor sensitivity

- Low sensitivity:  
Wipers will operate when more rainfall is detected.
- + High sensitivity:  
Wipers will operate when less rainfall is detected.

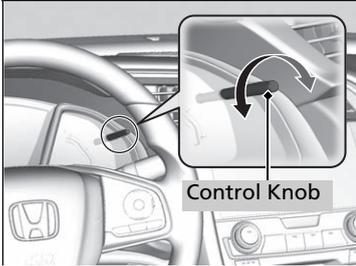
## ▶▶ Automatic Intermittent Wipers\*

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



Do not put the wiper lever in **AUTO** when cleaning the windshield or driving through a car wash. If the wiper lever is in **AUTO**, and the power mode is in ON, the rainfall sensor may respond to your hand or car wash liquids, and the wipers may operate automatically.

## Brightness Control



When the position lights are turned on and the ignition switch is in ON \*1, you can use the brightness control knob to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Turn the knob to the right.

**Dim:** Turn the knob to the left.

You will hear a beeper\* when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### ☒ Brightness Control

By default, the instrument panel switches to night-time mode when the headlights are automatically engaged. You can delay the timing of night-time mode activation when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 324

Pressing the  (**TRIP**) knob or the  (display/information) button\* switches the display.

If you turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max, the beeper sounds. This cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on.

*Continued*

On information display



On driver information interface

Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models



Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

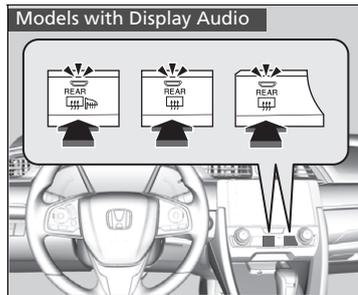
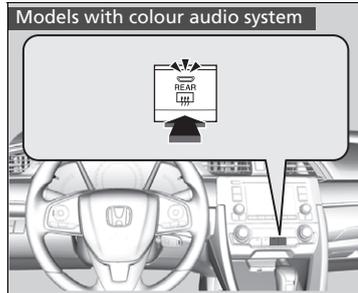


■ **Brightness level indicator**

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.



The rear demister and heated door mirrors automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, they do not automatically switch off.

### ⌘ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Button

#### NOTICE

When cleaning the inside of the rear window, be careful not to damage the heating wires. It is critical to wipe the window from side to side along the demister heating wires.

This system consumes a lot of power, and may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine. Turn it off when the window has been defogged.

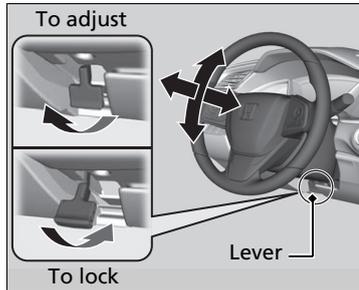
Also, do not use the system for a long period even if the engine is idling.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **WARNING**

Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

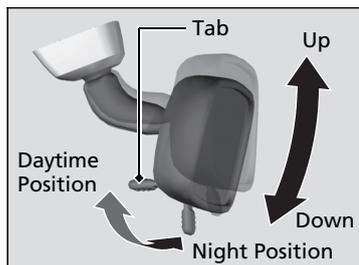
Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Make any steering wheel adjustments before you start driving.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

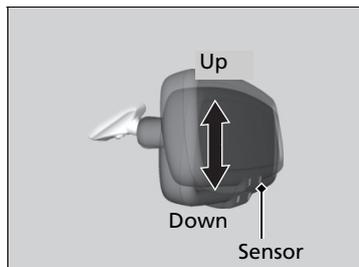
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position helps to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active.

### Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

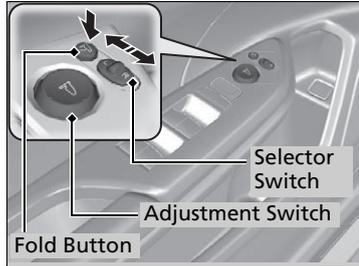
➤ **Front Seats** P. 205

### Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the shift position is in **R**.

\* Not available on all models

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the ignition switch is in ON \*1.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors\*

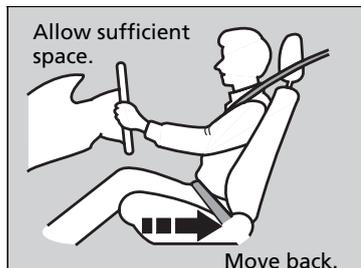
Press the fold button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

# Adjusting the Seats

## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### Adjusting the Seats

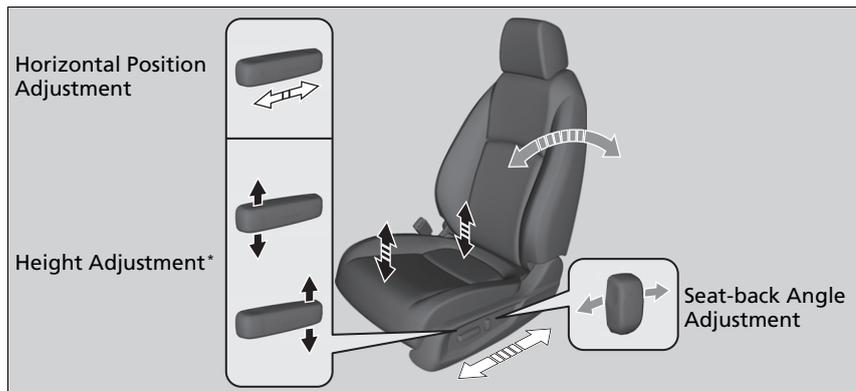
## ⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

## Adjusting the Seat Positions

### Adjusting the driver's power seat\*



In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

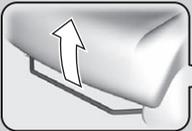
\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)

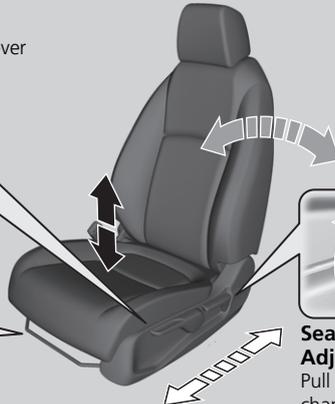
### Height Adjustment

Driver's seat only  
Pull up or push down the lever  
to raise or lower the seat.



### Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up on the bar to move the  
seat, then release the bar.



Driver's seat is shown.

### Seat-back Angle Adjustment

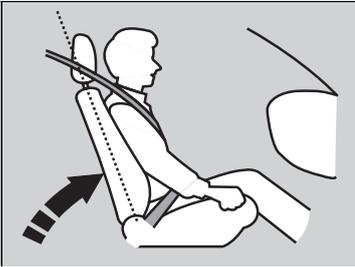
Pull up the lever to  
change the angle.



## ▶▶ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ▣ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### ⚠ WARNING

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

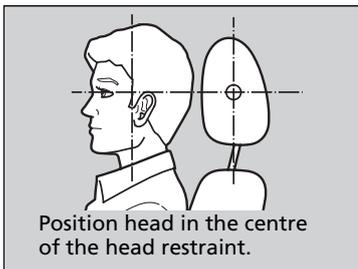
Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

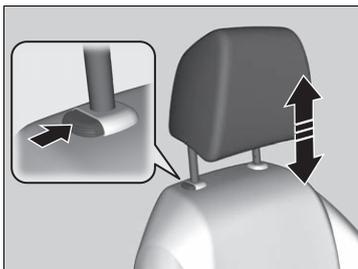
## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Front head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.



### ► Adjusting the Front Head Restraints

#### **⚠ WARNING**

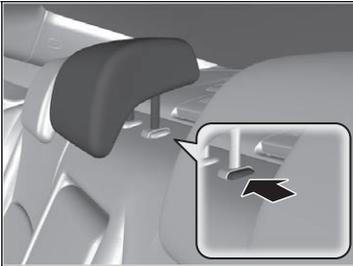
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any object between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.

## ■ Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position \*



A passenger sitting in a back seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### **To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

### **To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### **To remove a head restraint:**

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### **To reinstall a head restraint:**

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

### ▣ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

## **⚠ WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

\* Not available on all models

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

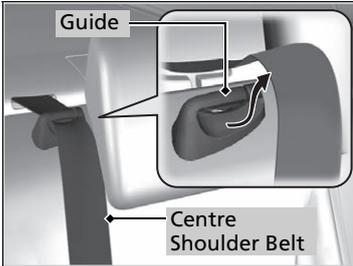
#### **WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

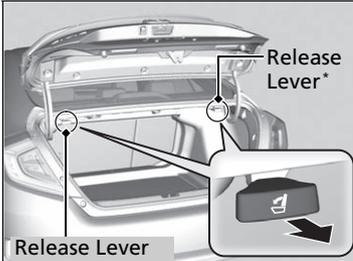
Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Rear Seats

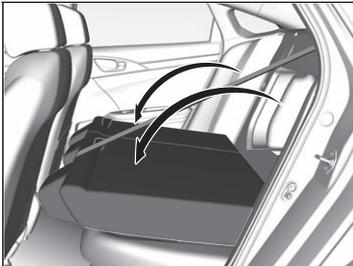
### Folding Down the Rear Seats\*



1. Remove the centre shoulder belt\* from the guide.



2. Pull the release lever in the boot to release the lock.



3. Fold the seat-back down.

### Folding Down the Rear Seats\*

The rear seat-back(s\*) can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the boot.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the boot lid open.

⚠ **Exhaust Gas Hazard** P. 87

To lock a seat-back upright, push it backwards until it locks.

When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure that the folded seat-back does not press against the front passenger seat, as this can cause the occupant detection sensor\* in the front passenger seat to work improperly.

⚠ **Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator\*** P. 65

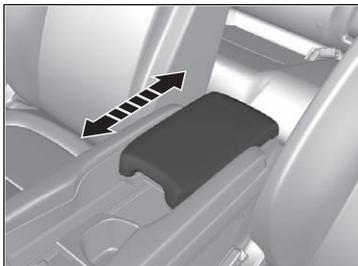
**Make sure all items in the boot or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.**

The front seat(s) must be far enough forward so they do not interfere with the rear seats as they fold down.

\* Not available on all models

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

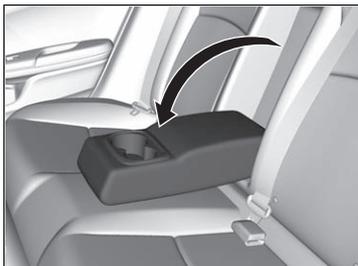


The console lid can be used as an armrest.

**To adjust:**

Slide the armrest to desired position.

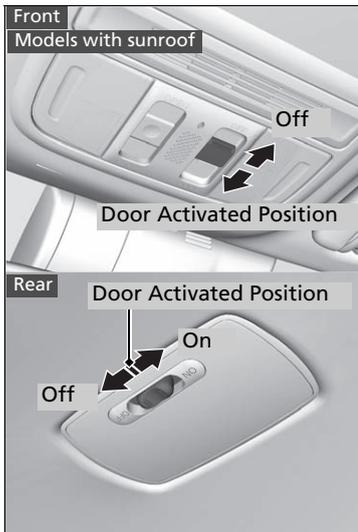
### ■ Using the Rear Seat Armrest



Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.

#### ■ Models without keyless access system

- You remove the key from the ignition switch.

#### ■ Models with keyless access system

- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed. The lights go off after 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.

#### ■ Models without keyless access system

- When you remove the key from the ignition switch but do not open a door.

#### ■ Models with keyless access system

- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

#### ■ Models with Display Audio

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1.

#### ■ Models without keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door with the key in the ignition switch.

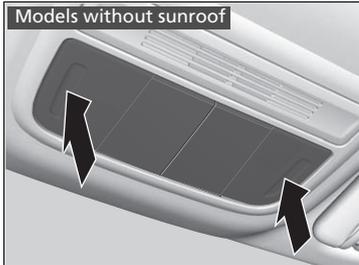
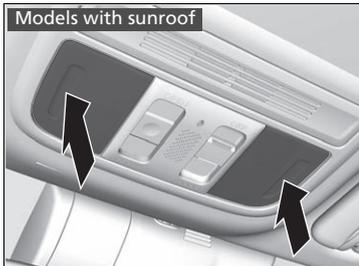
#### ■ Models with keyless access system

- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, or without the key in the ignition switch, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## ■ Map Lights



The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses.

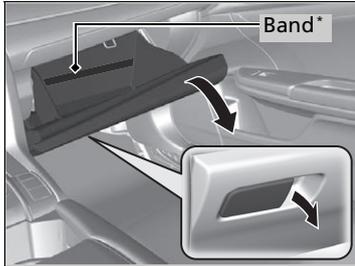
## »» Map Lights

### ■ Models with sunroof

When the ceiling light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the map light will not go off when you press the lens.

## Interior Convenience Items

### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

### ☒ Glove Box

#### **⚠ WARNING**

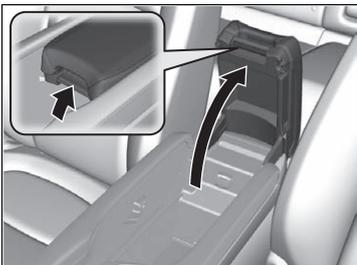
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

\* Not available on all models

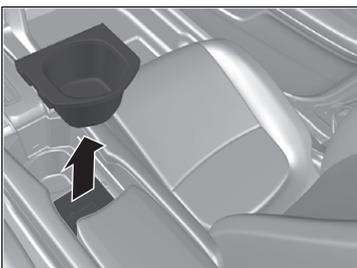
*Continued*

## ■ Console Compartment

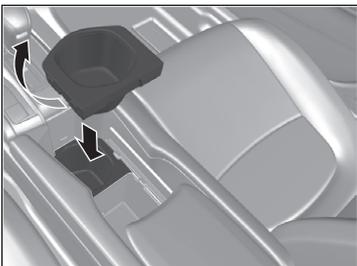


Your vehicle has a multi-function centre console. It includes a storage compartment and an armrest.

Slide the armrest to the rearmost position. Pull up on the handle to open the console compartment.



You can create more storage space by removing the removable beverage holder tray.



If you want to make greater use of the console box:

1. Raise the removable beverage holder tray and reverse its orientation.
2. Put the removable beverage holder on the beverage holder which is in front.

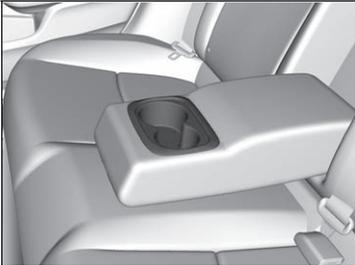
## ■ Beverage Holders



### ■ Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

- Move the armrest rearward to use the beverage holders.



### ■ Rear seat beverage holders

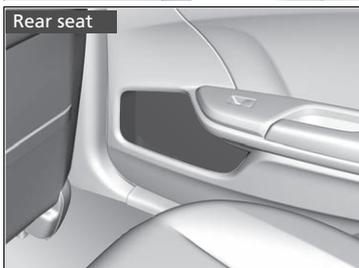
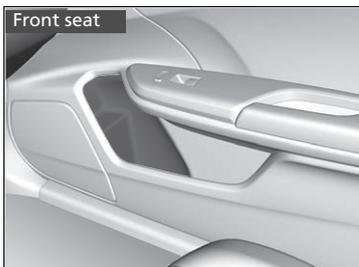
Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

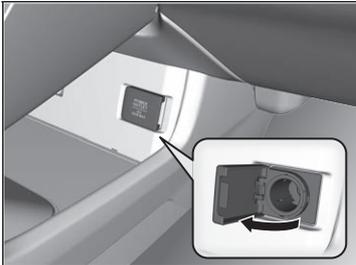
Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



■ Door beverage holders

## ■ Accessory Power Socket

The accessory power socket can be used when the ignition switch is in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1.



Open the cover to use it.

## ▣ Accessory Power Socket

### NOTICE

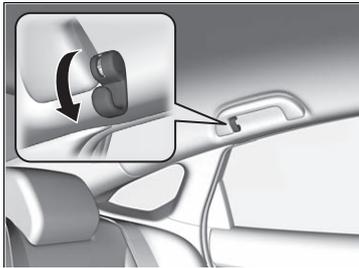
Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

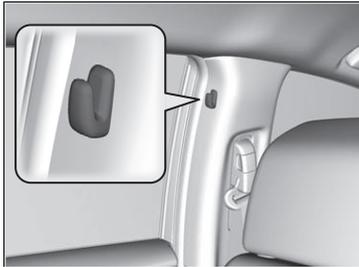
To prevent battery drain, only use the power socket with the engine running.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ■ Coat Hooks\*



There is a coat hook on the rear left grab handle. Pull it down to use it.

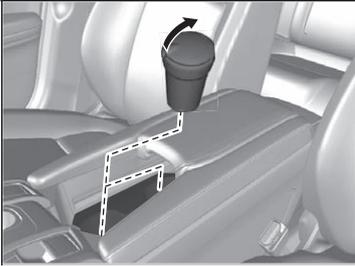


There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

### ▣ Coat Hooks\*

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Ashtray\*



The ashtray that fits in the front beverage holders is removable. Pull up on the lid to open.

## ▣ Ashtray\*

To prevent a possible fire and damage to your vehicle, use the ashtray only for discarding cigarettes and cigars.

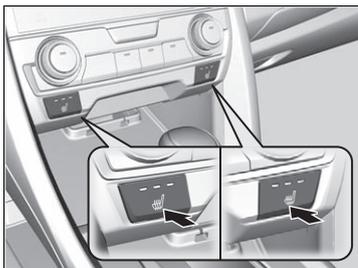
\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Front Seat Heaters \*



The ignition switch must be in ON \*1 to use the seat heaters. The HI setting heats the seats faster than the LO setting.



Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on)

Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on)

Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on)

Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When a comfortable temperature is reached while using the seat heaters in HI, select MID or LO to keep the seat warm.

## ⌘ Front Seat Heaters \*

### **WARNING**

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

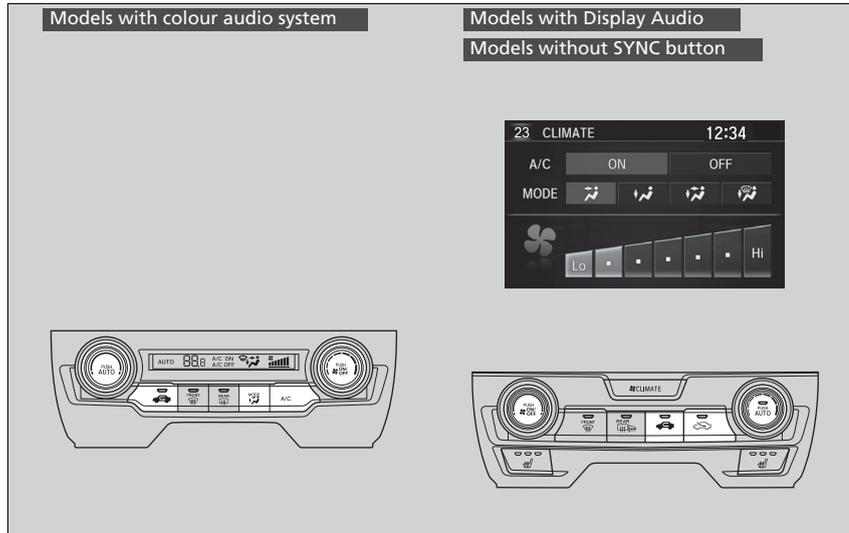
Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** (on/off) button to cancel.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

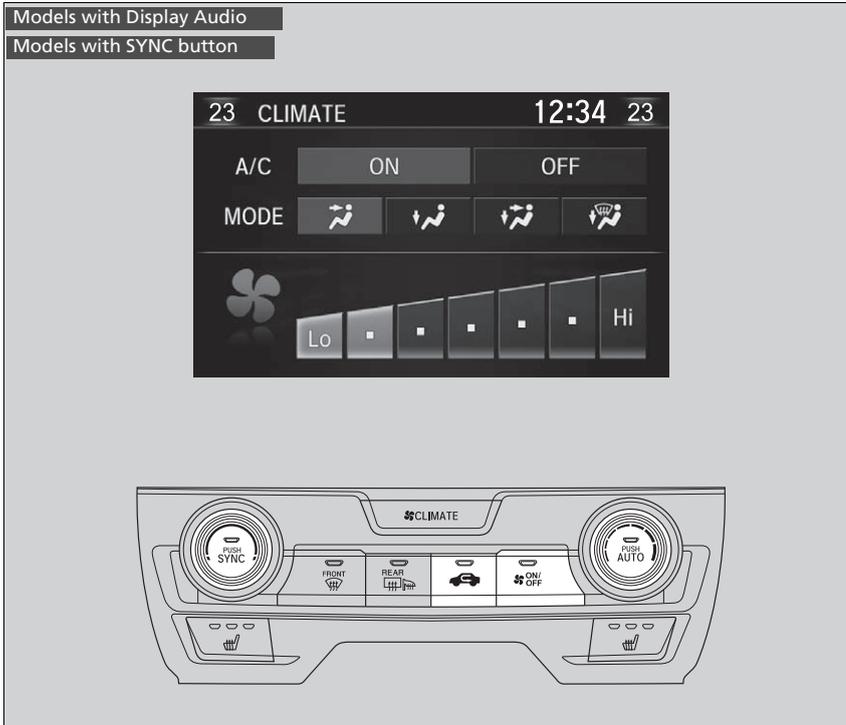
If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on AUTO, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

### Models with heater core

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

### Models without heater core

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **28** is displayed.



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.
3. Press the **ON/OFF** button to cancel.

#### ►► Using Automatic Climate Control

Pressing the **ON/OFF** button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

## ■ Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

### Models with colour audio system

#### Models with Display Audio

#### Models with SYNC button

Press the  (recirculation) button and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

#### Models with Display Audio

#### Models without SYNC button

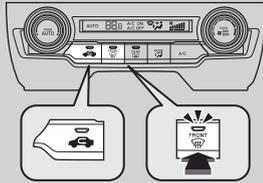
Press the  (recirculation) or  (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

 Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

 Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Models with colour audio system

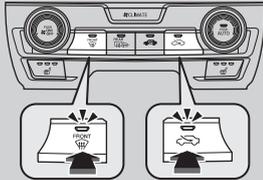


Pressing the  (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the  button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

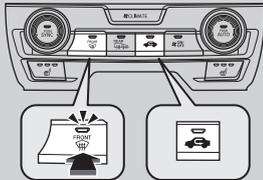
Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button



Models with Display Audio

Models with SYNC button



## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

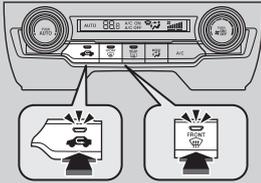
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

## ■ To rapidly defrost the windows

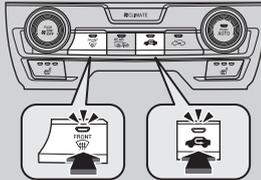
Models with colour audio system



1. Press the  button.
2. Press the  button.

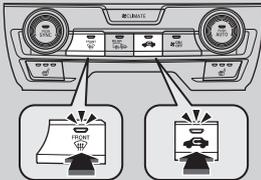
Models with Display Audio

Models without SYNC button



Models with Display Audio

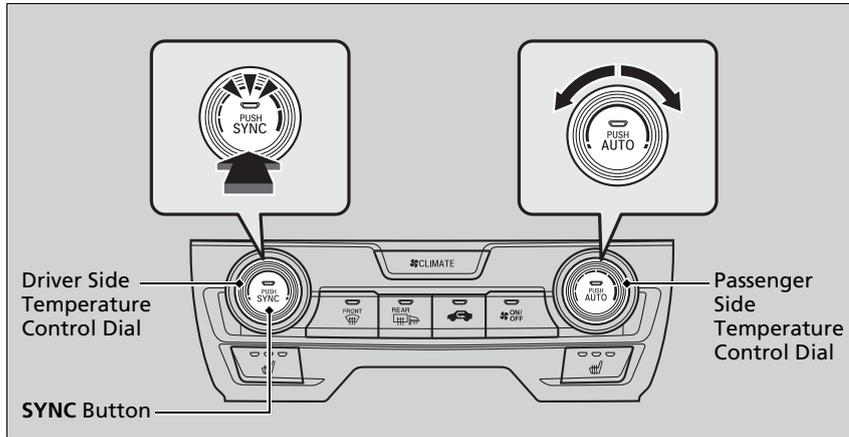
Models with SYNC button



## ☒ To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

## Synchronize Mode\*



### ► Synchronize Mode\*

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

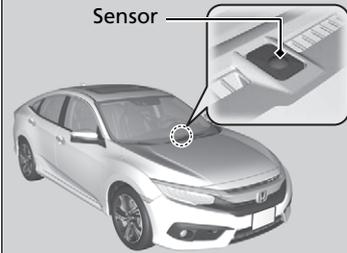
You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in Synchronize mode.

1. Press the **SYNC** button.
  - The system switches to Synchronize mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

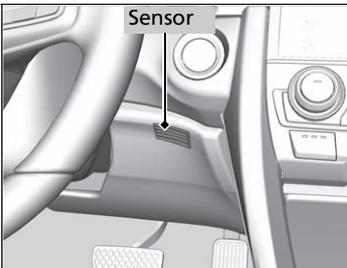
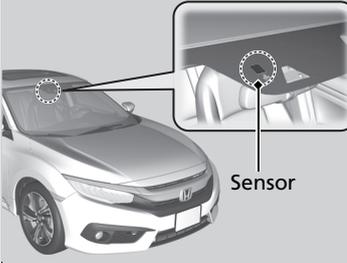
Press the **SYNC** button or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors

Models without automatic intermittent wiper



Models with automatic intermittent wiper



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

## Audio System\*

About Your Audio System .....	232
USB Port(s) .....	233
HDMI™ Port* .....	234
Audio System Theft Protection* .....	235
Audio Remote Controls .....	236

### Models with colour audio system

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen .....	242
Adjusting the Sound .....	246
Display Setup .....	248
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	249
Playing an iPod .....	254

Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	257
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	260

### Models with Display Audio

## Audio System Basic Operation

Audio/Information Screen .....	264
Adjusting the Sound .....	284
Display Setup .....	285
Playing AM/FM Radio .....	287
Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)* ..	290
Playing an iPod .....	293
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	296
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio .....	299
Playing a Video Using the HDMI™ .....	301

Smartphone Connection .....	303
Wi-Fi Connection .....	306
Siri Eyes Free .....	308
Apple CarPlay .....	309
Android Auto .....	312
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	316

## General Information on the Audio

<b>System</b> .....	318
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	324

### Models with colour audio system

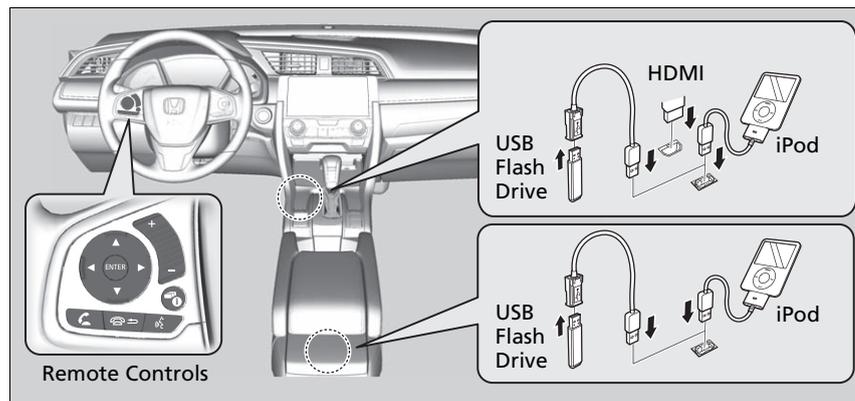
<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	357
<b>Models with Display Audio</b> .....	
<b>Hands-Free Telephone System</b> .....	378

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*®, and HDMI™\* devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface\*.



### About Your Audio System

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

## USB Port(s)



Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

### Models with colour audio system

- ▶ The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

### Models with Display Audio

- ▶ The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with smartphone connection, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

### ■ In the console compartment\*

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on the USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

### ⊞ USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit [www.apple.com/ipod](http://www.apple.com/ipod).

### USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 1.0A/1.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A/1.5A unless requested by the device.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged.

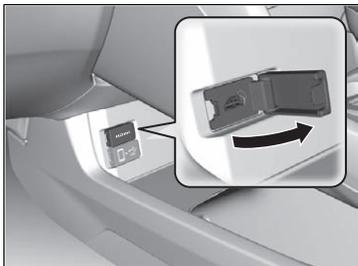
Turn the ignition switch to ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*<sup>1</sup> first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## HDMI™ Port\*



1. Open the cover.
2. Install the HDMI™ cable to the HDMI™ port.

### ⌘ HDMI™ Port\*

- Do not leave the HDMI™ connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend keeping your data backed up before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

## Audio System Theft Protection\*

---

The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

### ■ Reactivating the audio system

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Turn on the audio system.
3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
  - ▶ The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

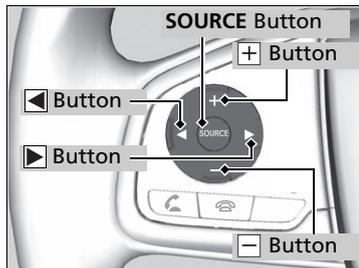
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

## Audio Remote Controls

### Models with colour audio system

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving.



### SOURCE Button

Cycles through the audio modes as follows:  
FM1→FM2→LW\*→AM→USB/iPod→  
*Bluetooth*® Audio

### + - (Volume) Buttons

Press **+**: To increase the volume.

Press **-**: To decrease the volume.

### ◀ ▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press **▶**: To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press **◀**: To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold **▶**: To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold **◀**: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press **▶**: To skip to the next song.
  - Press **◀**: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press and hold **▶**: To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold **◀**: To go back to the previous folder.

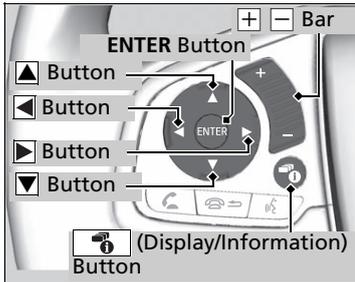
### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

**Models with Display Audio**

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.

**▲ ▼ Buttons**

Press ▲ or ▼ to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

FM→DAB\*→AM→USB→iPod→*Bluetooth*® Audio→Apps\*→Audio Apps\*→AUX-HDMI™

- When listening to the radio
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a preset, then press **ENTER**.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
  2. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a folder.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of tracks in that folder.
  4. Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

**▶▶ Audio Remote Controls**

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used. Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the  (Hang-up/back) button to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the  (Display/information) button to switch the display.

▶ **Switching the Display** P. 264

- When listening to an iPod
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
  2. Press  or  to select a category.
  3. Press **ENTER** to display a list of items in the category.
  4. Press  or  to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
    - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press  or  repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.
- When listening to *Bluetooth*® Audio
  1. From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.
  2. Press  or  to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

  **(Volume) Bar**

**Press** : To increase the volume.

**Press** : To decrease the volume.

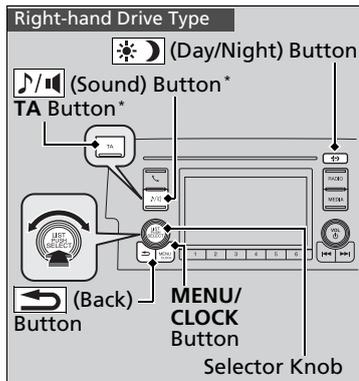
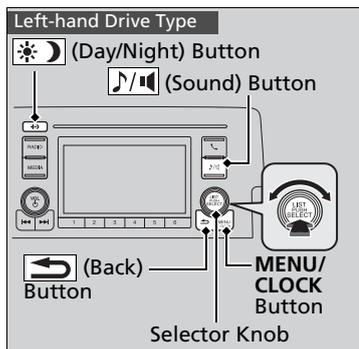
## ◀▶ Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press ▶:** To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press ◀:** To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold ▶:** To select the next strong station.  
To select the next service (DAB).\*
  - Press and hold ◀:** To select the previous strong station.  
To select the previous service (DAB).\*
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio
  - Press ▶:** To skip to the next song.
  - Press ◀:** To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  - Press and hold ▶:** To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold ◀:** To go back to the previous folder.

\* Not available on all models

## Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II**\*1.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

**Selector knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press to set your selection.

**MENU/CLOCK button:** Press to select any mode.

The available mode includes the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play modes can be also selected from scan, random, repeat, and so on.

**(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous display.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Menu Items

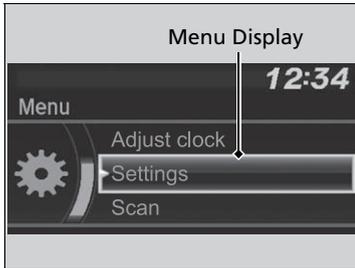
- Adjust Clock** P. 148
- Wallpaper Setup** P. 244
- Display Setup** P. 248
- Scan** P. 252, 259
- Play Mode** P. 256, 259
- RDS Settings** P. 251
- Bluetooth** P. 260

Press the **SOURCE**, , , , or button on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

- Audio Remote Controls** P. 236

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models



 **(Sound) button\***: Press to select the sound setting mode.

**TA button\***: Press to activate the TA station.

 **(Day/Night) button**: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press , then adjust the brightness using .

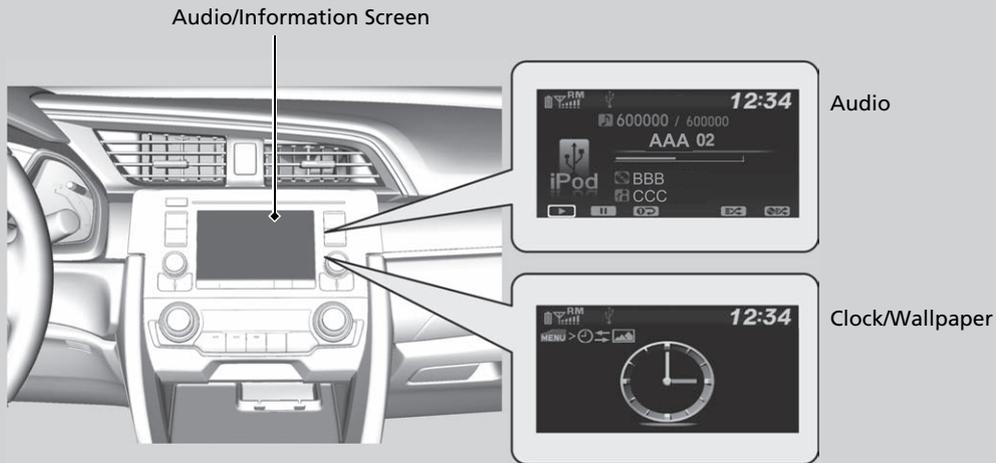
- ▶ Each time you press , the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and **OFF** mode.

\* Not available on all models

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display



### ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

### ■ Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

### ■ Change display

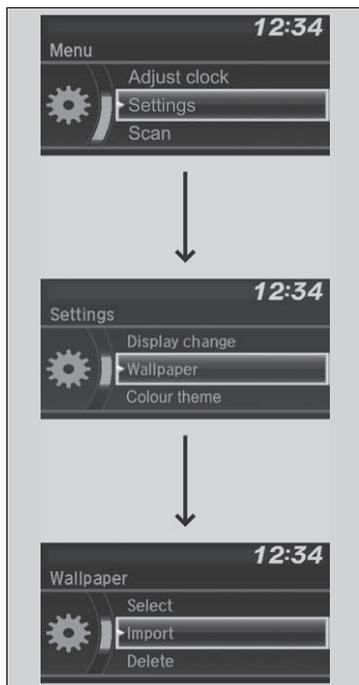
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press 
  - ▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select **Audio**.

## ■ Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.  
 ▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 233
2. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
3. Rotate to select **Settings**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
5. Rotate to select **Import**, then press .  
 ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Rotate to select a desired picture, then press .  
 ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
7. Press to save the picture.
8. Press to select **OK**.
9. Rotate to select a location to save the picture, then press .  
 ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

### ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.

**■ Select wallpaper**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Select**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired wallpaper, then press .

**■ To view wallpaper once it is set**

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display change**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to set, then press .

**■ Delete wallpaper**

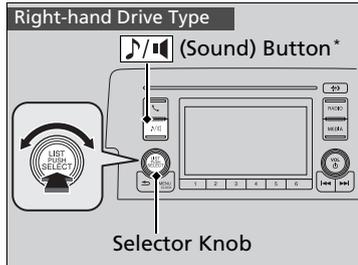
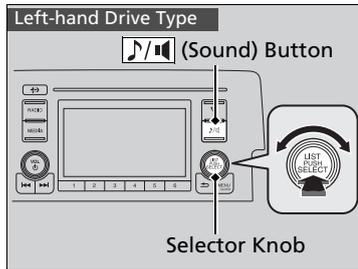
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Wallpaper**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Delete**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
5. Rotate  to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press .
6. Rotate  to select **Yes**, then press .
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

**▶▶ Wallpaper Setup**

To go back to the previous screen, press the  (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

## Adjusting the Sound



### Models with (sound) button

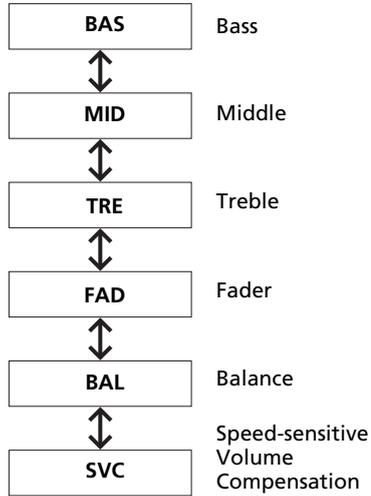
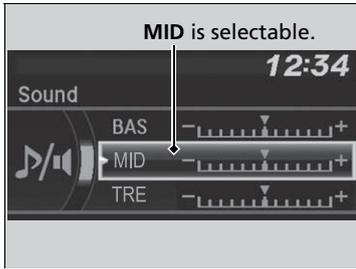
Press the  (sound) button, and rotate  to scroll through the following choices:

### Models without (sound) button

Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button and rotate  to select **Sound**, then press . Rotate  to scroll through the following choices:

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

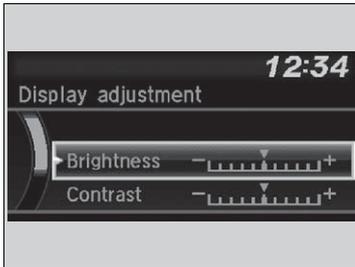


Rotate  to adjust the sound setting, then press .

## Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

### ■ Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Display adjustment**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Brightness**, then press .
5. Rotate  to adjust the setting, then press .

### ■ Changing the Screen's Colour Theme



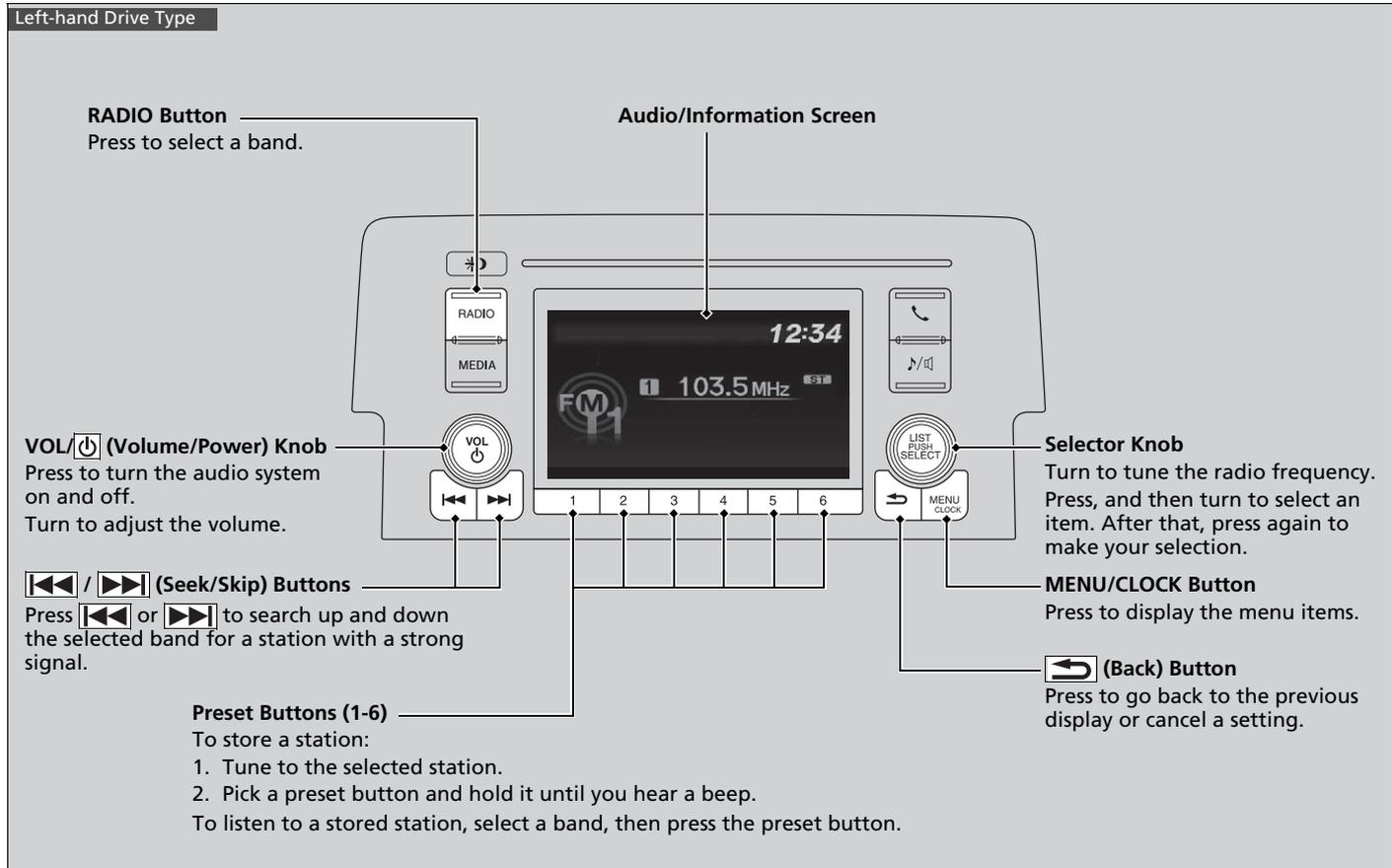
1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Colour theme**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select the setting you want, then press .

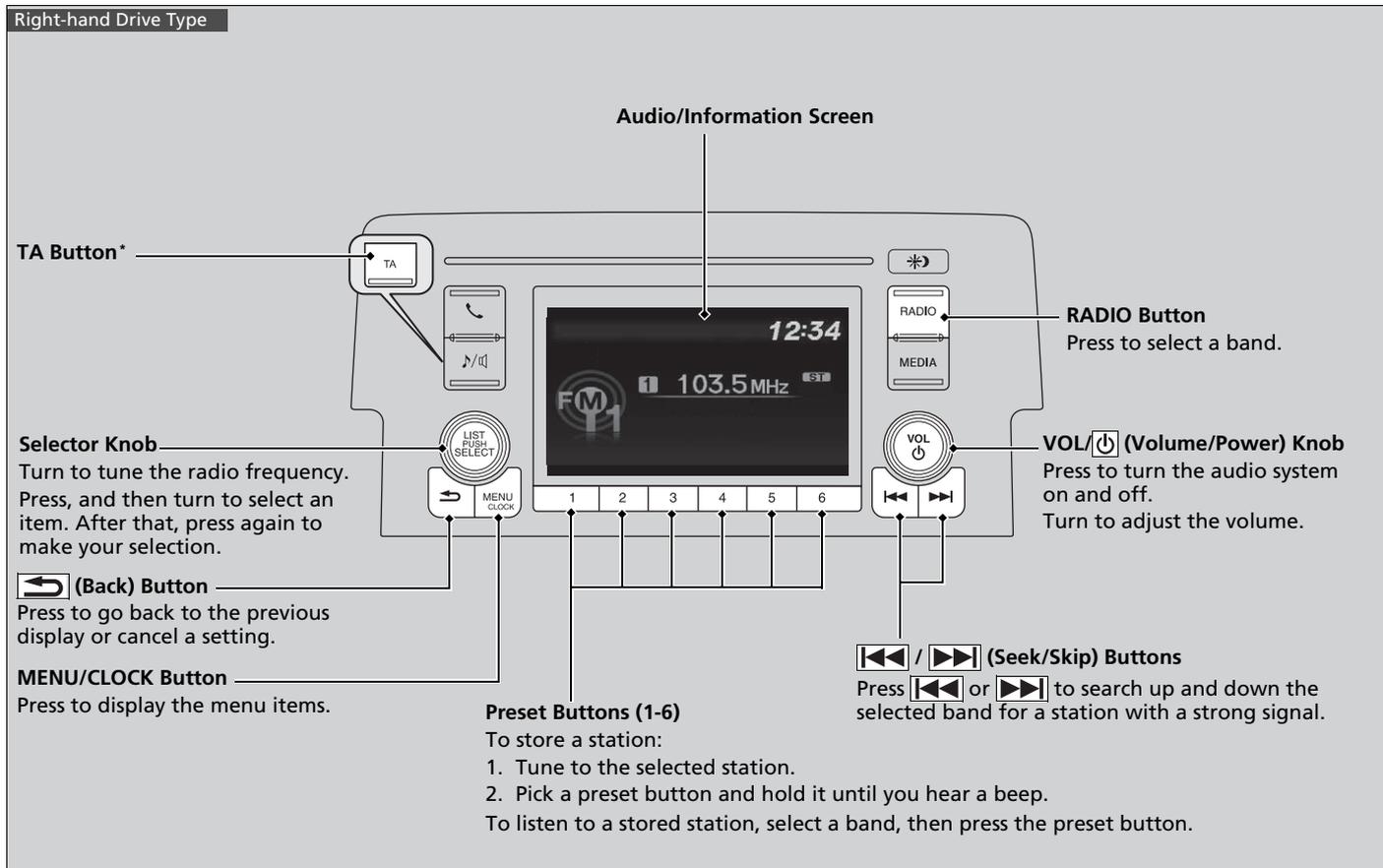
### ▣ Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.

# Playing AM/FM Radio

Left-hand Drive Type





## Radio Data System (RDS)\*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select the station, then press .

### ■ Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Press  while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate  to select **Update list**, then press .

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Radio text**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

### ■ Alternative Frequency (AF)

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **AF**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **AF** again to turn it off.

\* Not available on all models

## ▶▶ Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. FM1 and FM2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the **SOURCE** button on the steering wheel.

▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 236

## ▶▶ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Turning the Alternative Frequency (AF) function on and off turns the RDS on and off.

Pressing  switches the function between on and off.

Continued

### ■ Regional Programme (REG)

Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **REG**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **REG** again to turn it off.

### ■ News

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **RDS settings**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **News**, then press .
  - ▶ Select **News** again to turn it off.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Scan**, then press .

To turn off scan, press .

### ■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

**To turn the function on:** Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the display. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

**To cancel the function:** Press the **TA** button.

#### ☒ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

##### **TA\***

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the display.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

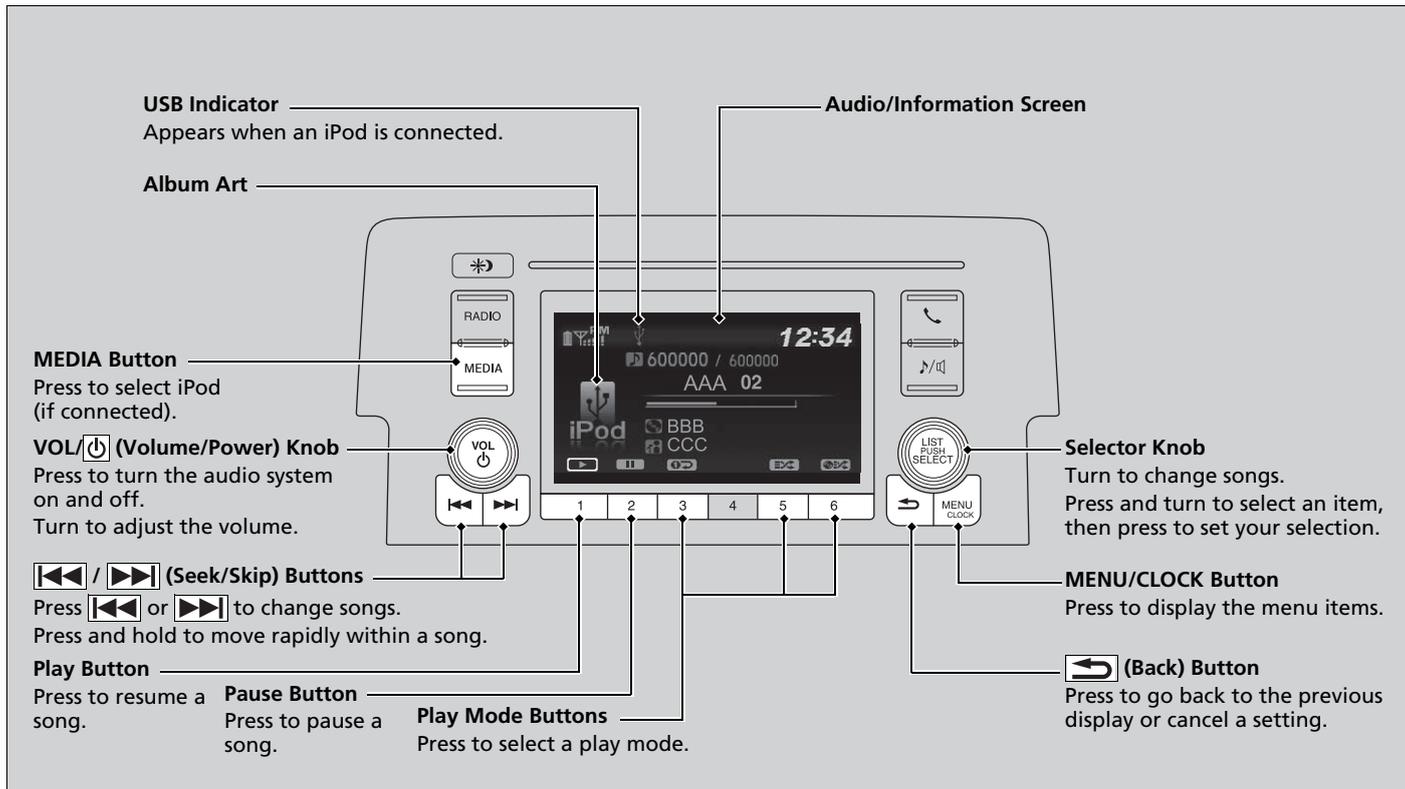
Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

\* Not available on all models

## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

➔ **USB Port(s)** P. 233



## How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

### ▶▶▶ Playing an iPod

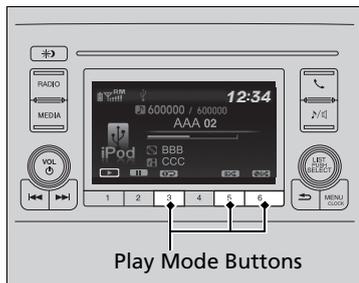
Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 316

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

 **Shuffle albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

 **Random all:** Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

 **Repeat one track:** Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate  to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate  to select a mode, then press .

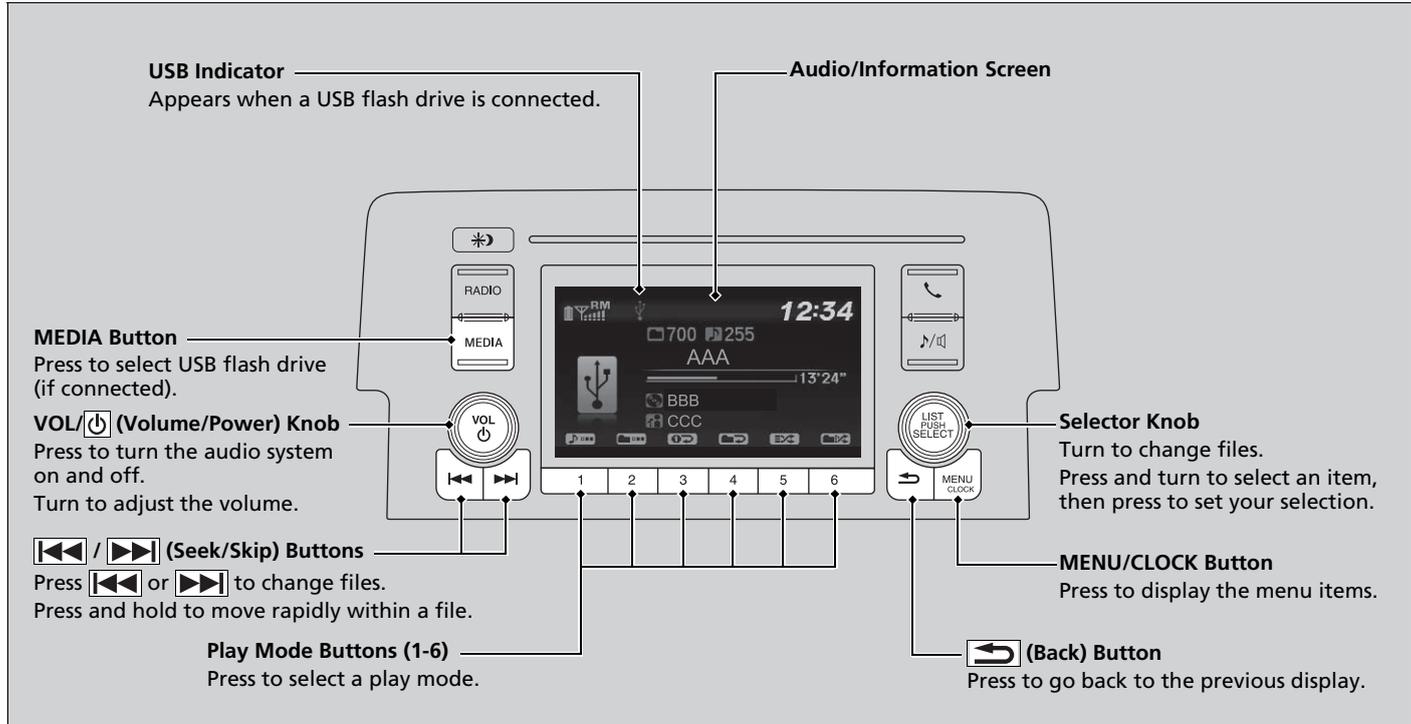
To turn it off, rotate  to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA or AAC\*1 format.

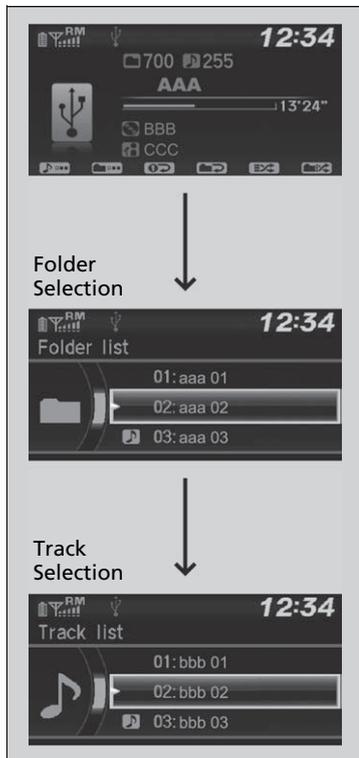
Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

📌 **USB Port(s)** P. 233



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

## How to Select a File from a Folder with the Selector Knob



1. Press  to display a folder list.

2. Rotate  to select a folder.

3. Press  to display a list of files in that folder.

4. Rotate  to select a file, then press .

### ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 318

Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

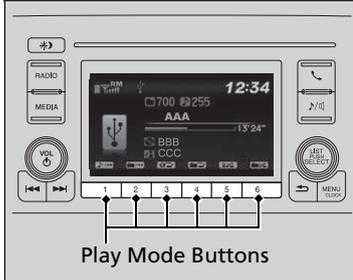
The audio system displays **Unplayable file**, and then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 316

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons.

Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

### To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Repeat

**Repeat one folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat one track:** Repeats the current file.

### Random

**Random in folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random all:** Plays all files in random order.

### Scan

**Scan folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate to select **Play mode**, then press .

Rotate to select a mode, then press .

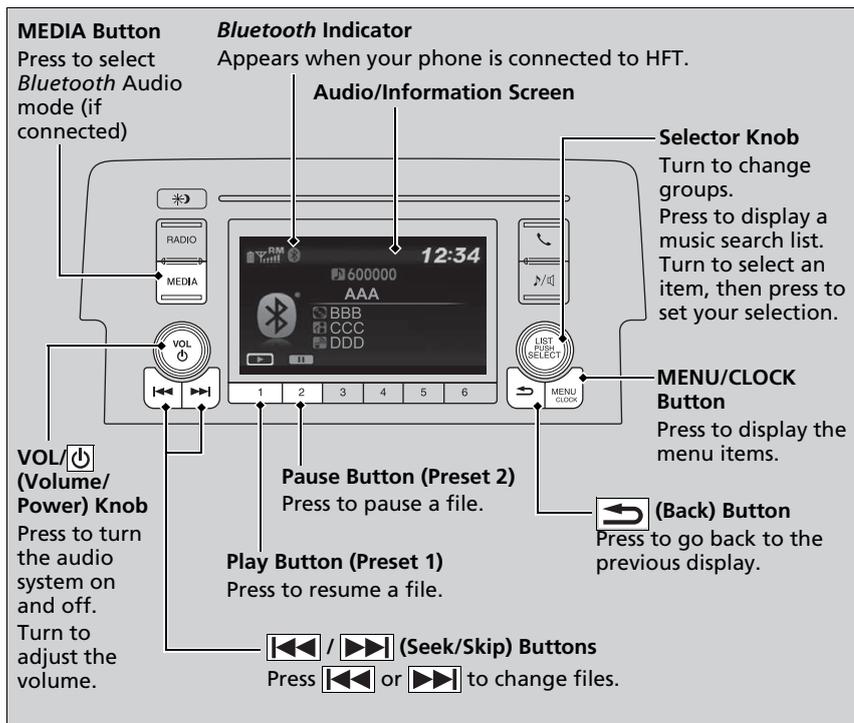
To turn it off, rotate to select **Normal play**, then press .

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

☑ **Phone Setup** P. 363



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

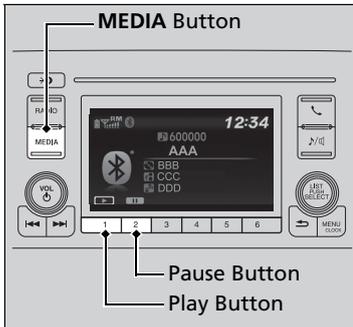
Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Press the **Play** or **Pause** button to select a mode.

## ☒ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

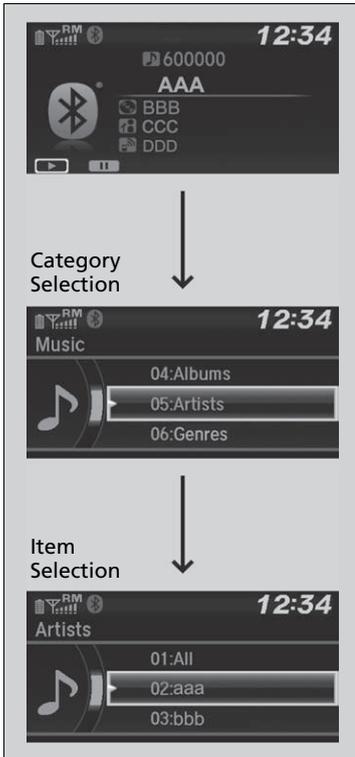
If any audio device is connected to the USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth*® Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

### How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.



1. Press to display the music search list.

2. Rotate to select a category.

3. Press to display a list of items in the category.

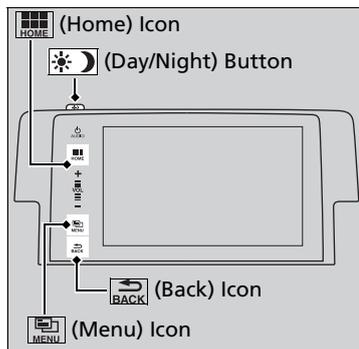
4. Rotate to select an item, then press .

- ▶ Press and rotate repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

# Audio System Basic Operation

## Models with Display Audio

To use the audio system function, the ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON \*1.



: Select to go to the home screen.

 **Switching the Display** P. 264

: Select to display available options including **Sound**, **View Radio Text**\*2, **Music Search**, and playback modes.

: Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.

 Button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

Press the  button once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

▶ Each time you press the  button, the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*2: Displayed only when text information has been received.

## Audio System Basic Operation

### Audio Menu Items

-  **Station List** P. 288, 289
-  **Music Search List** P. 294, 297
-  **Scan** P. 289, 298
-  **Play Mode** P. 295, 298

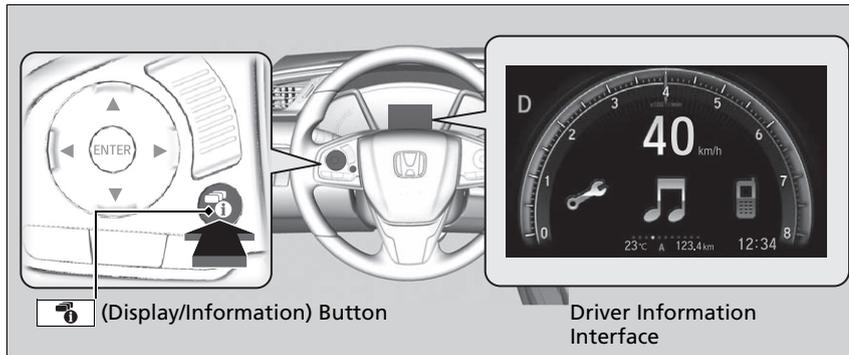
## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display

#### ■ Using the (display/information) button

Press the  (display/information) button to change the display.

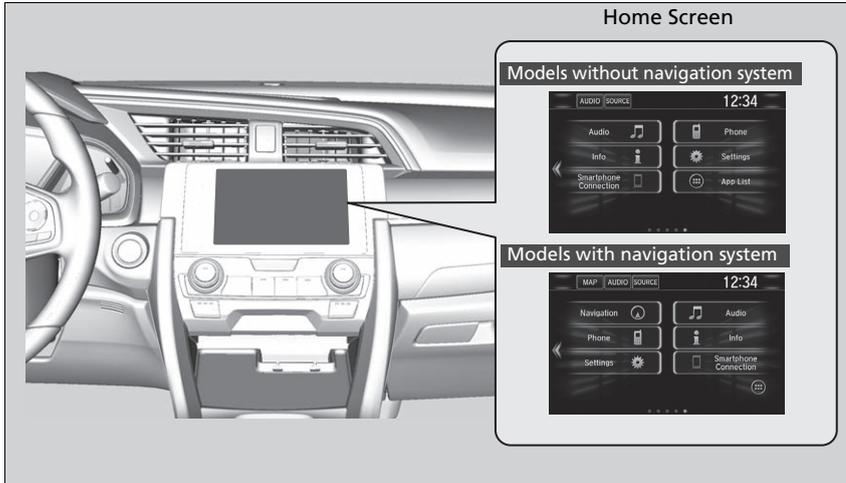


#### ▶▶ Using the (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

#### ▶▶ Customizing the Meter P. 268

## ■ Using the audio/information screen



Select  to go to the home screen.

Select **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation\***, **Smartphone Connection** (**Apple CarPlay**, **Android Auto**), **App List\***/ (APPS icon)\*, or **Instrument Panel**.

### ■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

 **Hands-Free Telephone System** P. 378

## ▶▶ Using the audio/information screen

### Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be grayed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

 **Customized Features** P. 324

## ■ Info

Displays **Trip Computer** or **Clock/wallpaper**. Select  on the **Info Menu** screen to see all available options: **Trip Computer**, **Clock/wallpaper** and **System/device information**.

### Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **History of Trip A** tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.  
To delete the history manually, select **Delete history** on the **History of Trip A** tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select **Yes**.

**Clock/wallpaper:** Displays the clock and wallpaper.

### System/device information:

- **System Info:** Displays the software version of the audio system.
- **USB info:** Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

## ■ Audio

Displays the current audio information.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

- **Customized Features** P. 324

## ■ Navigation\*

Displays the navigation screen.

- **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

## ■ Smartphone Connection

Connects with your smartphone\*1 and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system.

▶ **Apple CarPlay** P. 309

▶ **Android Auto** P. 312

## ■ App List (📱)

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen.

▶ **Home Screen** P. 274

## ■ Instrument Panel

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

\*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

## ■ Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



1. Select .
2. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
4. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ■ Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.



1. .
2. **Settings**
3. **System**
4. **Configuration of Instrument Panel**

### ⌘ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, press **Swap Config.**

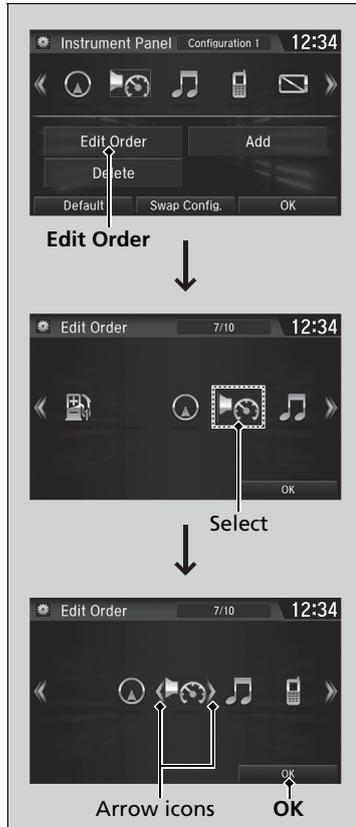
When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select  during customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:

### 1. Edit Order



### 2. Select the icon you want to move.

- ▶ You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

### 3. Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.

### 4. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

### ▶▶ Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

#### 1. **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.

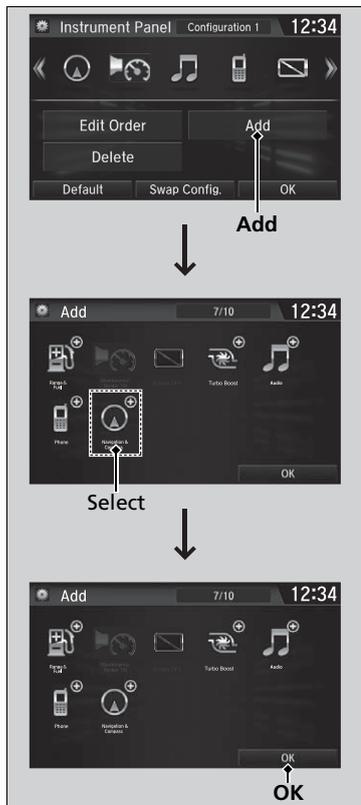
3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

4. Select **OK**.

▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## ■ Adding contents

You can add up to 10 contents on the driver information interface. To add contents, first select:



### 1. Add

### 2. Select an icon you want to add.

- ▶ You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

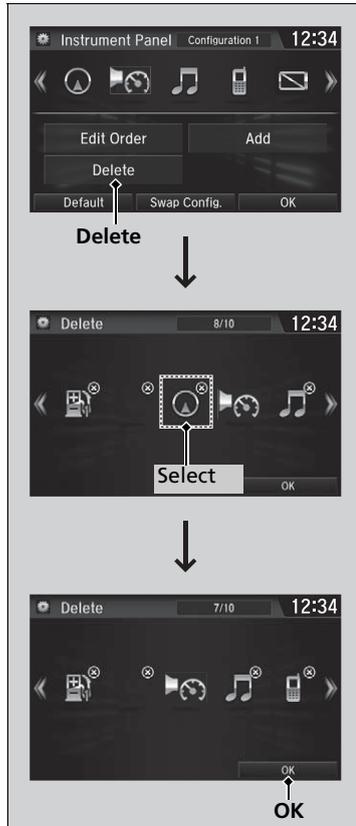
## ▶▶ Adding contents

Icons that are grayed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

## ■ Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



### 1. Delete

### 2. Select an icon you want to delete.

- ▶ The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

### 3. Select **OK**.

- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

### ☒ Deleting contents

You can also delete contents by selecting:

#### 1. **Delete** or **Edit Order**

2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
4. Select **OK**.

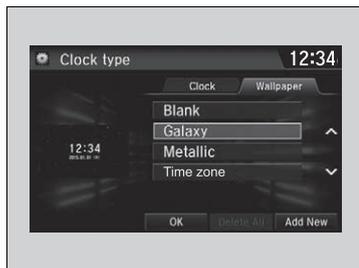
- ▶ The screen will return to the **Configuration of Instrument Panel** screen.

## Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

▶ **USB Port(s)** P. 233

2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock**.
4. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
5. Select **Add New**.
  - ▶ The picture name is displayed on the list.
6. Select a desired picture.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected.** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

1. Select .
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

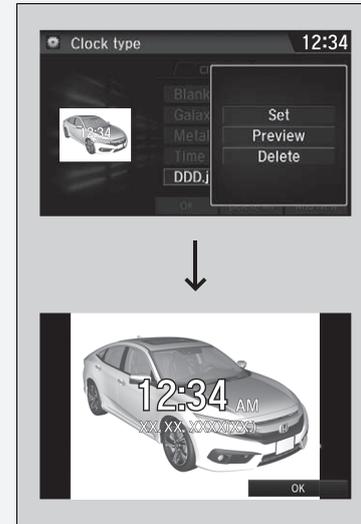
1. Select .
2. Select **Info**.
3. Select .
4. Select **Clock/wallpaper**.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

1. Select **Settings**.
2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Clock/Wallpaper Type**, then open the **Wallpaper** tab.
  - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
  - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
5. Select **Delete**.
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to delete completely.
  - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

#### Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



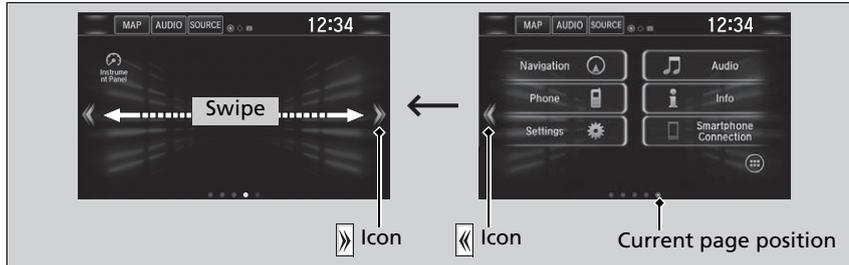
To go back to the previous screen, select **OK**, or select .

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select **Delete All**, then **Yes**.

## ■ Home Screen

### ■ To change to a next screen



Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

## ▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Select  to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

## ■ To use apps or widgets



1. Select .
2. Select **App List** .
  - ▶ The apps screen appears.
3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- **Browser:** Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- **Calculator:** Displays Calculator.
- **Gallery:** Displays images.
- **Downloads:** Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- **App Installer:** Allows you to install apps.
- **Search:** Displays various retrieval screen.

### ▶▶ To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 356

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 356

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

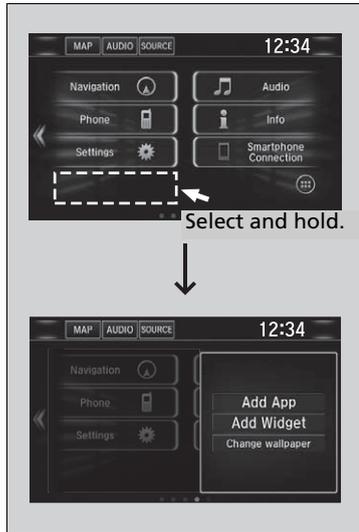
1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select an App that you want to delete.
7. Select **Delete**.

Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

Continued

### ■ To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Select .
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
  - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

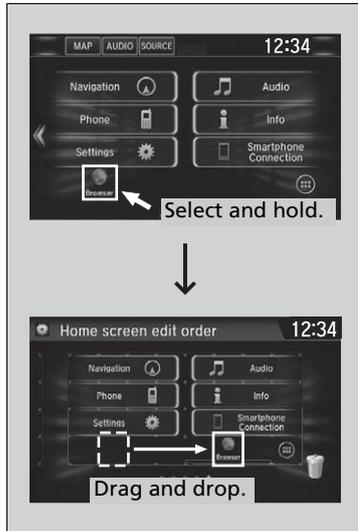
3. Select **Add App** or **Add Widget**.
  - ▶ The apps screen appears.



4. Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
5. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
6. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



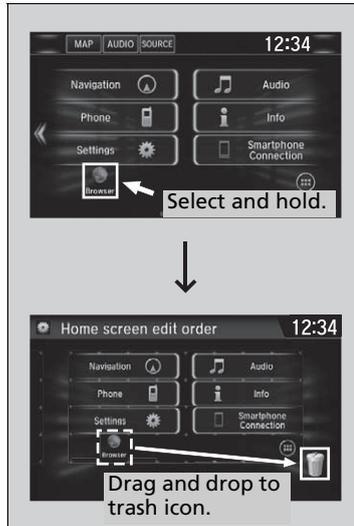
1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation\*, Smartphone Connection, App List** (☰), and **Instrument Panel** icons in the same manner.

## ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
  - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **OK**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the **Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation**, **Smartphone Connection, App List** (☰), and **Instrument Panel** icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

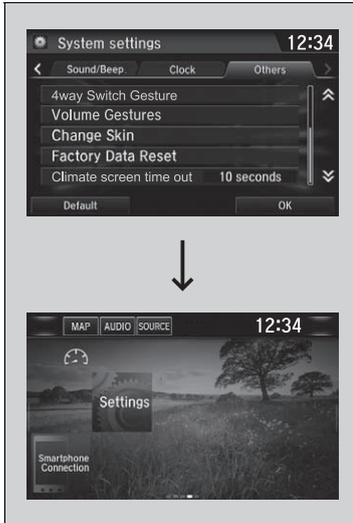
## Status Area



1. Swipe the upper area of the screen.
  - ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Select  or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area.

## Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.



1. Select **[HOME]**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Change Skin**.
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

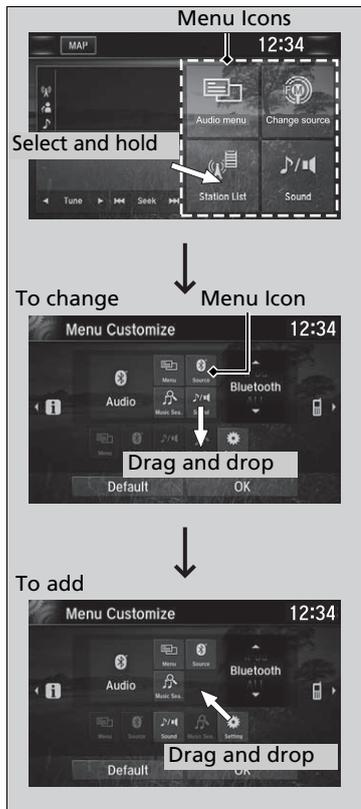
1. Select **[HOME]**.
2. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
3. Select **Change wallpaper**.
4. Select **Gallery**, **Live wallpapers**, or **Wallpapers**.

If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 324

## Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of the **Audio**, **Phone**, and **Info** screen.



1. Select and hold menu icon.

2. Select ◀ or ▶ icon, then **Audio**, **Phone**, or **Info** from **Menu Customize**.

3. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

4. Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.

5. Select **OK**.

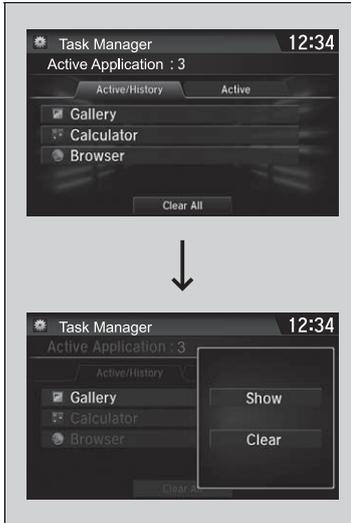
## Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change menu icon:

Select **Settings**→**System**→**Home tab**→**Menu icon position**

## ■ Closing Apps

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



1. Select and hold .
2. Select the **Active** tab.
  - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
3. Select an app you want to close.
4. Select **Clear**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

## ⌘ Closing Apps

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and re-launch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then **Yes**.

You cannot close the Garmin\* apps.

\* Not available on all models

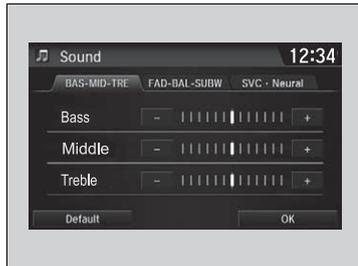
## Adjusting the Sound



1. Select .
2. Select **Audio**.
3. Select .
4. Select **Sound**.

Select a tab from the following choices:

- **BAS-MID-TRE**: Bass, Middle, Treble
- **FAD-BAL\*/FAD-BAL-SUBW\***: Fader, Balance, Subwoofer\*
- **SVC\*/SVC-Neural\***: Speed Volume Compensation, DTS Neural Sound™\*



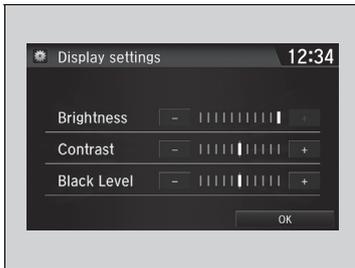
### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

## Display Setup

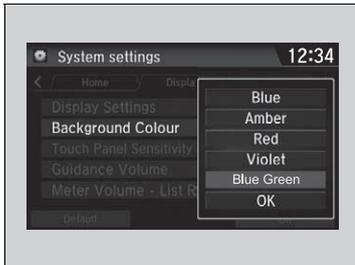
You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Display Settings**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

### Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

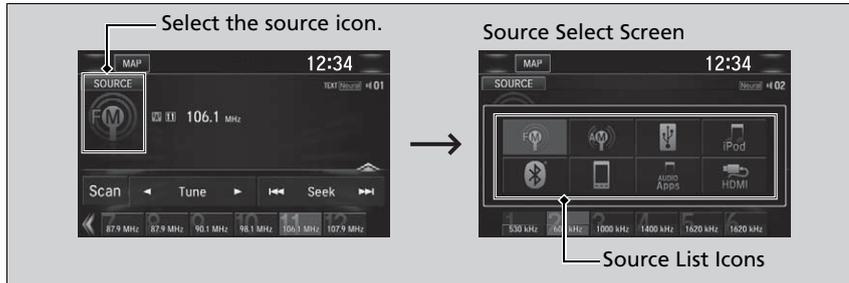


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Display** tab.
5. Select **Background Colour**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

### Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## ▶▶ Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, **AUDIO APPS** is displayed on the lower right of the screen. These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen. You can startup those audio apps from **AUDIO APPS**.

## Playing AM/FM Radio

The diagram illustrates the audio system's interface. At the top, the **Driver Information Interface** shows a speedometer with a central display for radio frequency (89.1 MHz) and station name (AAA). Below it, the **Audio/Information Screen** displays the current station (106.1 MHz) and a list of preset frequencies (7.9 MHz to 107.9 MHz). A vertical column of icons on the left side of the screen provides quick access to various functions.

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

- Power/Audio Icon**: Select to turn the audio system on and off.
- VOL (Volume) Icons**: Select to adjust the volume.
- (Menu) Icon**: Select to display the menu items.
- (Back) Icon**: Select to go back to the previous display.
- Scan Icon**: Select to scan each station with a strong signal.
- Tune Icons**: Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the radio frequency.
- Open/Close Icon<sup>\*1</sup>**: Displays/hides the detailed information.
- Seek Icons**: Select ▶▶ or ◀◀ to search the selected band up or down for a station with a strong signal.
- Preset Icons**: Tune the preset radio frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.  
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the  or  button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

 **Audio Remote Controls** P. 236

You can store 6 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the **Station List** tab.
3. Select **Refresh**.

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

1. Select .
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

### ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or .

### ⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

\* Not available on all models

## Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)\*

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Power/Audio Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**(Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Scan Icon**  
Select to scan each receivable ensemble or service.

**Ensemble Icons**  
Select ◀ or ▶ to tune the ensemble.  
Select and hold ◀ or ▶ to search the selected service up to down for an ensemble until an receivable ensemble is found.

**Open/Close Icon\*1**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Service Icons**  
Select ◀◀ or ▶▶ to tune the service component.

**Preset Icons**  
Tune the preset frequency. Select and hold the preset icon to store that station. Select >> to display preset 7 onwards.

\*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ Preset Memory

To store a service:

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

You can also store a preset service by the following procedure.

1. Tune to the selected service.
2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
3. Select the **Preset** tab.
4. Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

## ■ Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select the ensemble.

## ■ Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
2. Select the **Ensemble List** tab.
3. Select **Update List**.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode

Press the ▲ or ▼ button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 236

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

1. Select **Scan**.
2. Select **Scan Ensemble** or **Scan Service**.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

## ■ Radio text

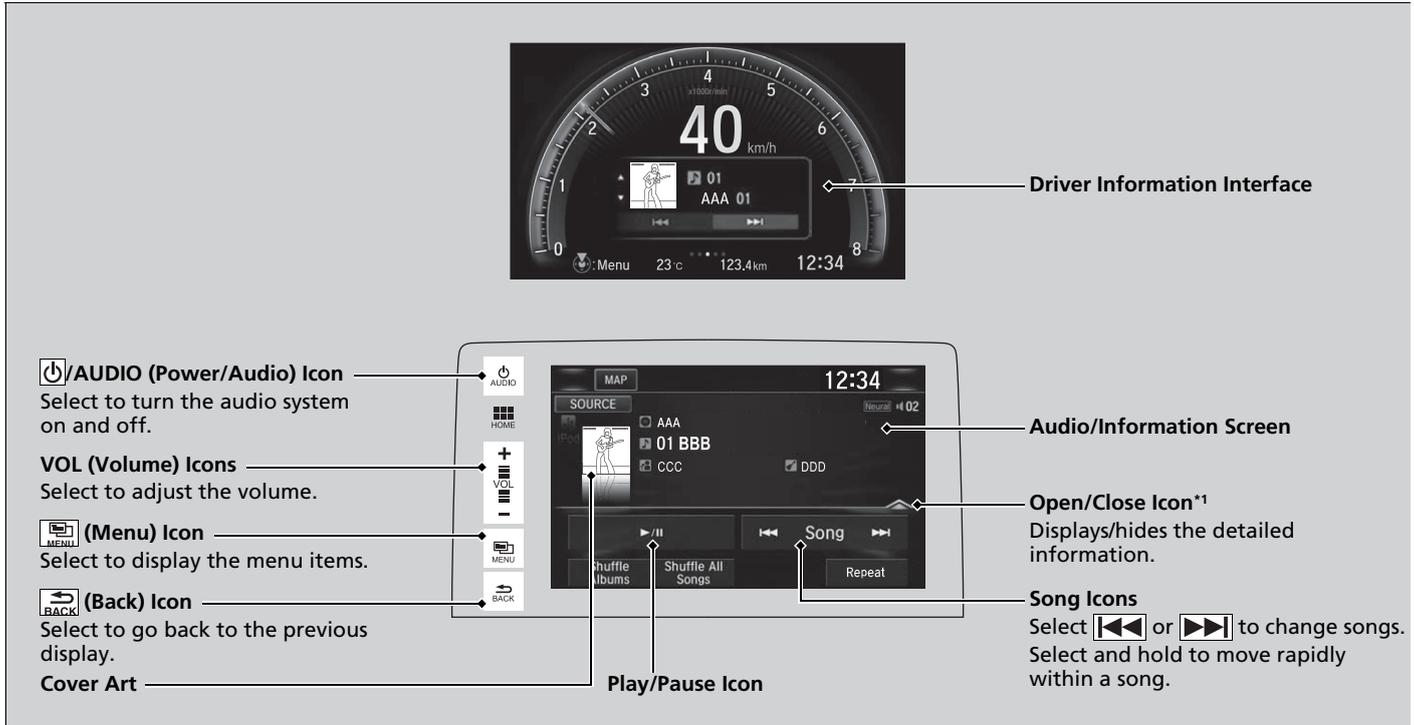
Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

1. Select .
2. Select **View Radio Text**.

## Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your dock connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

 **USB Port(s)** P. 233



**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Open/Close Icon\*1**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Song Icons**  
Select  or  to change songs. Select and hold to move rapidly within a song.

**Play/Pause Icon**

**Power/Audio (Power/Audio) Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

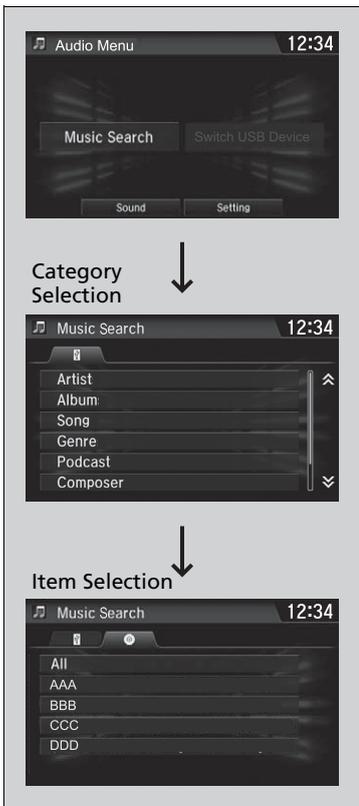
**(Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Cover Art**

\*1: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## ■ How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select the items on that menu.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

 **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 316

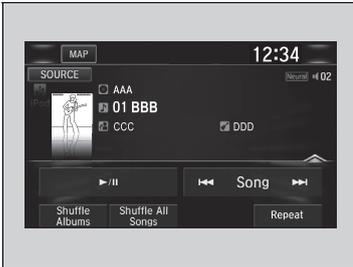
If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.

Select a play mode.



### To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Shuffle Albums:** Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

**Repeat:** Repeats the current track.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and videos files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC\*1, or WAV\* format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

➤ **USB Port(s)** P. 233

**Driver Information Interface**

**Audio/Information Screen**

**Open/Close Icon\*2**  
Displays/hides the detailed information.

**Track Icons**  
Select or to change files. Select and hold to move rapidly within a track.

**Power/Audio (Power/Audio) Icon**  
Select to turn the audio system on and off.

**VOL (Volume) Icons**  
Select to adjust the volume.

**(Menu) Icon**  
Select to display the menu items.

**(Back) Icon**  
Select to go back to the previous display.

**Folder Icons**  
Select to skip to the next folder, and to skip to the beginning of the previous folder.

\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\*2: Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select  and select **Music Search**.

2. Select **Music** or **Movie**.

3. Select a folder.

4. Select a track.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 318

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

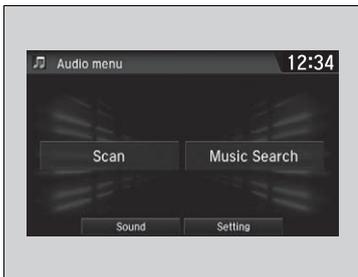
The audio system displays **Unplayable File**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 316

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.



### ■ Scan

1. Select .
2. Select **Scan**.
3. Select a play mode.



### ■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

To turn off Scan, select  or **Cancel**.

To turn off random or repeat, select the mode again.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Scan

**Scan Folders:** Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

**Scan Tracks:** Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

### Random/Repeat

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Repeat Folder:** Repeats all files in the current folder.

**Repeat Track:** Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file:

**Play/Pause:** Plays or pauses the file.

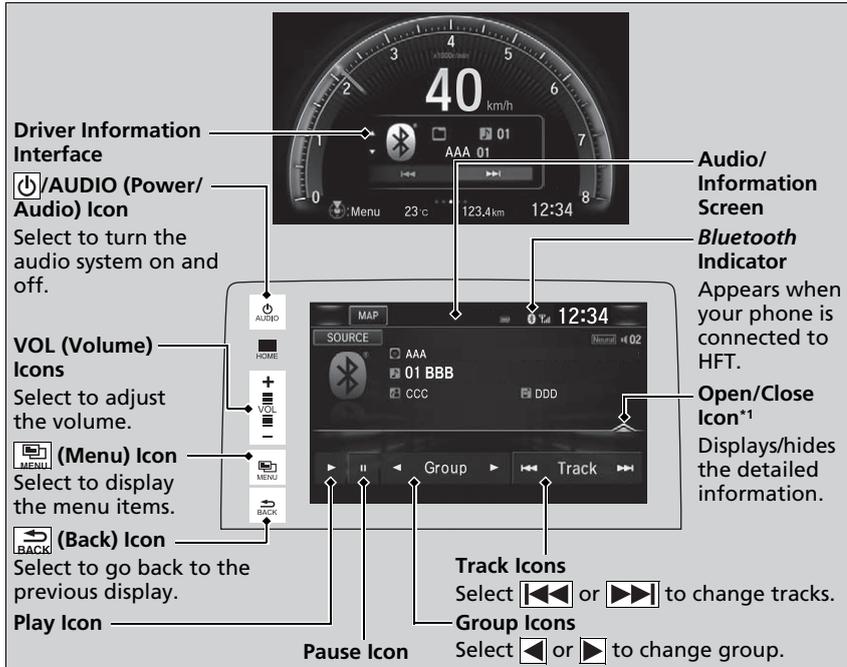
**Stop:** Stops the file.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

☑ **Phone Setup** P. 385



\*1: Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **Connect**  from the **Bluetooth device list** screen.

☑ **Phone Setup** P. 385

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

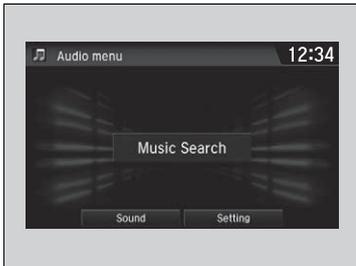


1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.  
    ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 385
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

- **To pause or resume a file**  
Select the play icon or pause icon.

## ■ Searching for Music



1. Select .
2. Select **Music Search**.
3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
4. Select an item.  
    ▶ The selection begins playing.

## ▶▶ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the *Bluetooth*® settings on the **Audio menu** screen by the following procedure.

1. Select .
2. Select **Setting**.

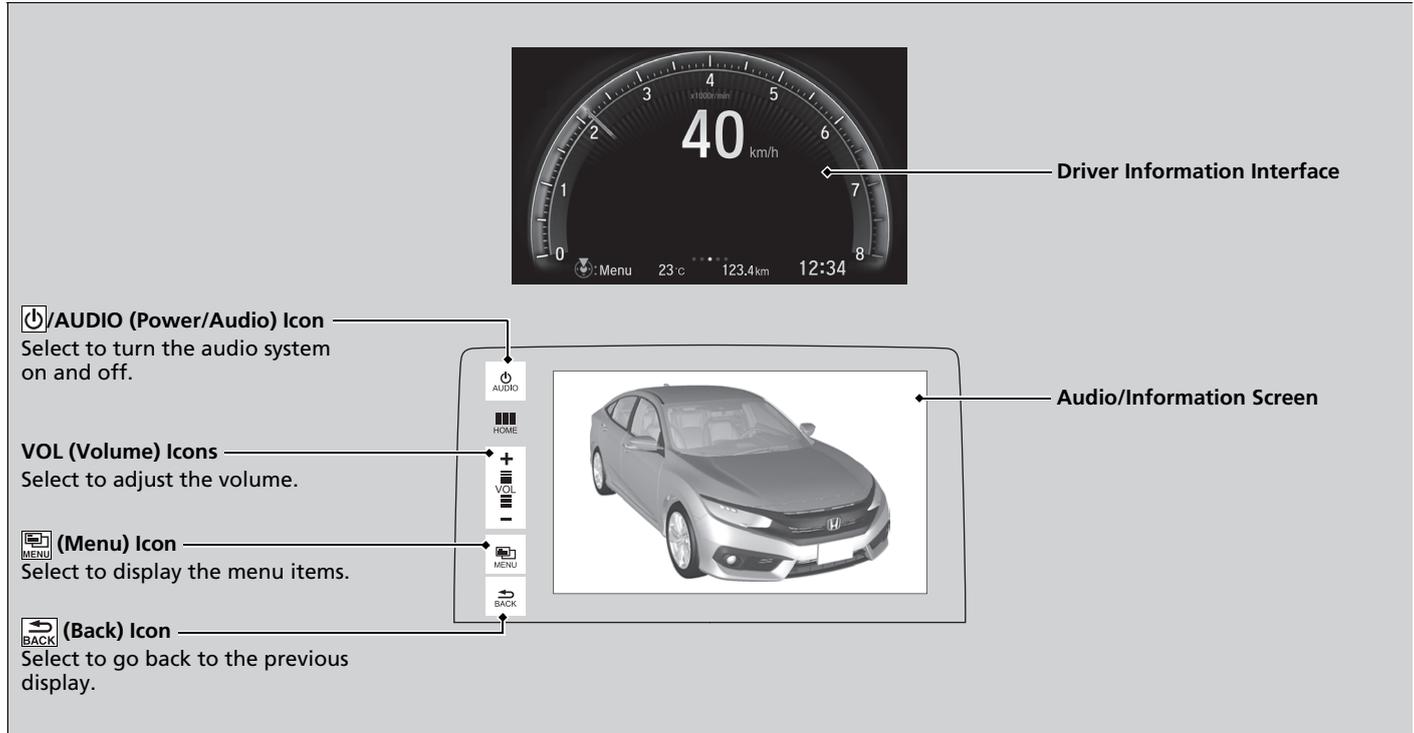
## ▶▶ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI™ cable, then select the HDMI™ mode.

▶ **HDMI™ Port\*** P. 234



\* Not available on all models

## ■ Changing the Screen Aspect



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Audio**.
4. Select the **Video** tab.
5. Select **Aspect Ratio Adjustment**.
6. Select the setting you want.
7. Select **OK**.

## ▶▶ Playing a Video Using the HDMI™

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

## Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable, or wirelessly.

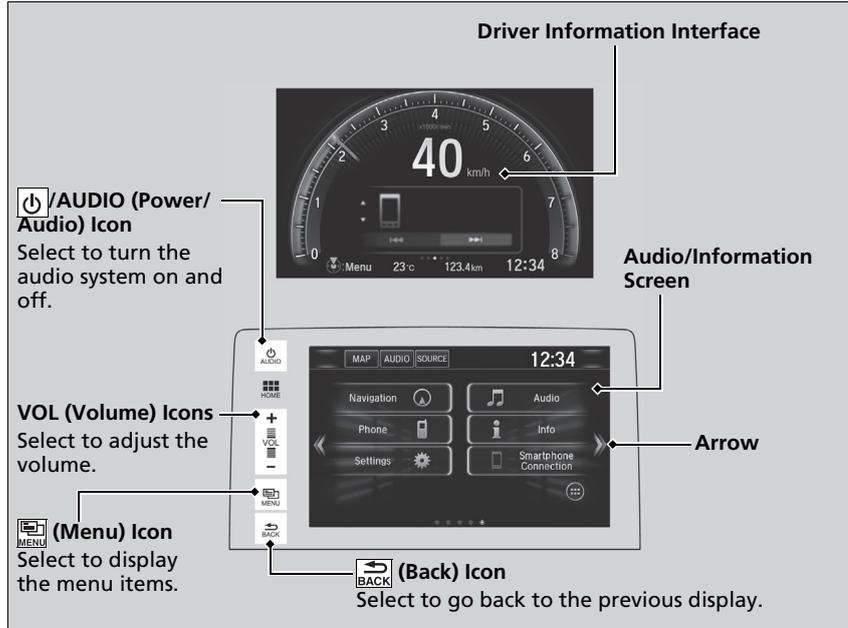
▶ **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 305

▶ **Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)** P. 306

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 385

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 385



Continued

### Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

▶ **To change the currently paired phone**  
P. 386

The following may vary by phone type:

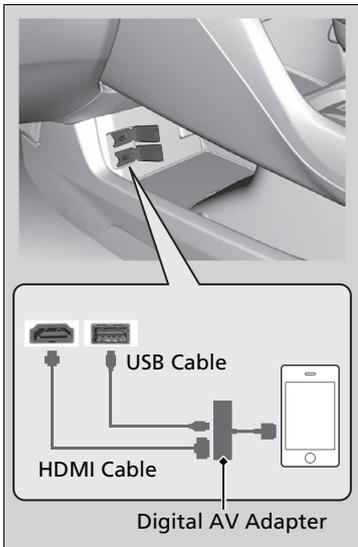
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

## ■ Connecting Your iPhone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 385

2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port.

3. Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.

▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.

4. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.

▶ You may need to operate from the phone.

5. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.

▶ To go back to the previous screen, select



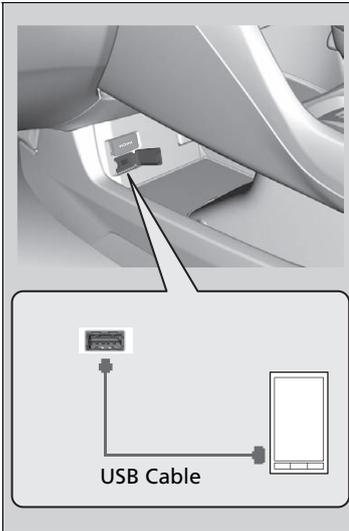
## ▶▶ Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI™ port first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB port, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or HDMI™ purchasing information.

## ■ Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.
  - ▶ **Phone Setup** P. 385
2. Plug in your phone to the USB jack.
  - ▶ You may need to operate from the phone.
  - ▶ Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
3. Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ To go back to the previous screen, select



## ☒ Connecting Your Smartphone

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB jack. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

## Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Wi-Fi** tab.
5. Select **Wi-Fi On/Off Status**, then **On**.
6. Select **Wi-Fi Device List**.
  - ▶ Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
  - ▶ Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
  - ▶ If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select **Scan**.
7. Select **Add**.
  - ▶ If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **OK**.
  - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the top of the screen.
8. Select  to go back to the home screen.



### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

## ▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

### iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

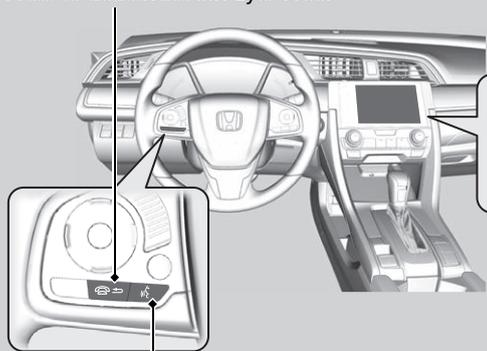
## Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

➔ **Phone Setup** P. 385

### Using Siri Eyes Free

 **(Hang-up/back) Button**  
Press to deactivate Siri Eyes Free.



**Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free**

**While in Siri Eyes Free:**  
The display remains the same.  
No feedback or commands appear.

 **(Talk) Button**  
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

### ❖ Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

### ❖ Using Siri Eyes Free

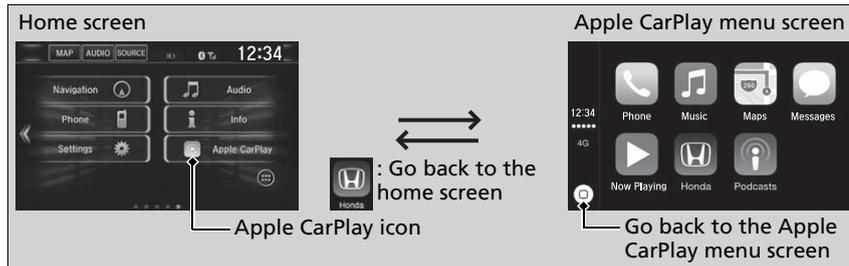
Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 233

### Apple CarPlay Menu



#### ■ Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

#### ■ Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

#### ■ Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

#### 📄 Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port located in the centre console storage will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

📄 **USB Port(s)** P. 233

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

📄 **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 310

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

📄 **Phone Setup** P. 385

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Continued

## ■ Maps

Display Apple CarPlay map and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

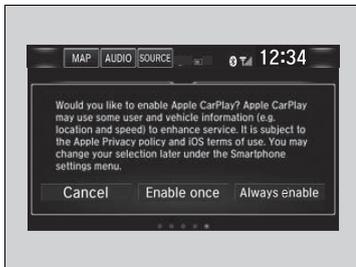
### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

## ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay



**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

## ▶▶ Apple CarPlay

### Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

### ▶▶ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

Select  → Settings → Smartphone → Apple CarPlay

### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Press and hold the  (talk) button to activate Siri Eyes Free.



## ☒ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri Eyes Free

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri Eyes Free.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit [www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

🔗 **USB Port(s)** P. 233

🔗 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 314

### NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

### 🔗 Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. The USB port in the centre console storage will not enable Android Auto operation.

🔗 **USB Port(s)** P. 233

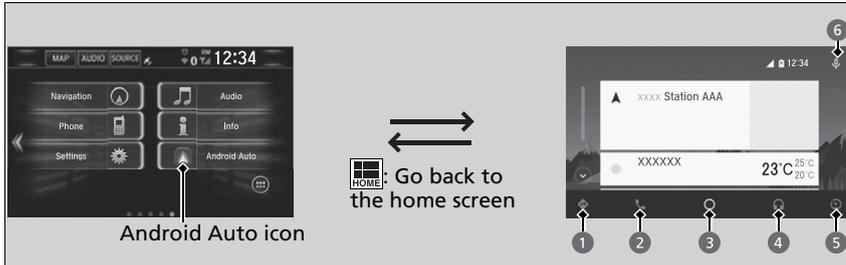
To directly access the Android Auto phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen.

🔗 **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 314

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

🔗 **Phone Setup** P. 385

## Android Auto Menu



### 1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

#### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

### 2 Phone (Communication)

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

### 3 Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

### Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

#### 4 Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

#### 5 Go back to the Home Screen.

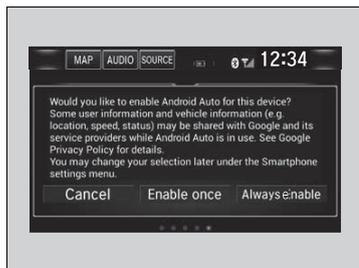
#### 6 Voice

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

### Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

#### Enabling Android Auto



**Enable once:** Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)

**Always enable:** Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)

**Cancel:** Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

#### Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

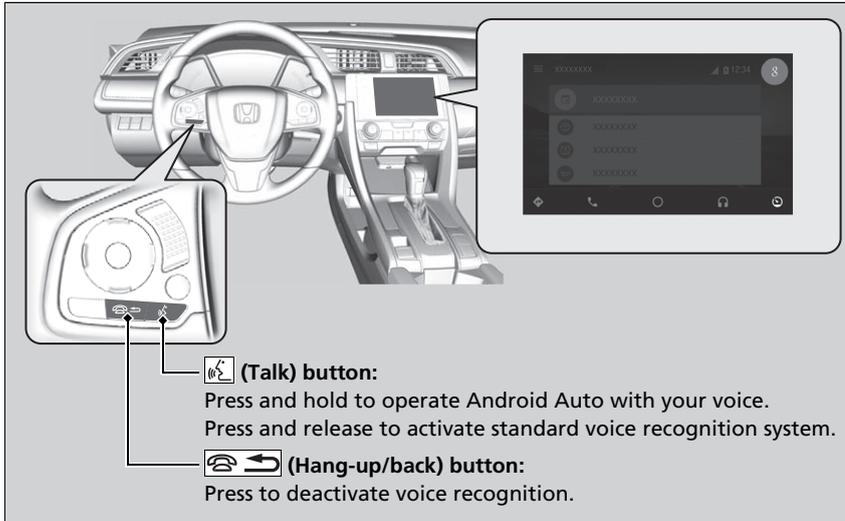
Select  → Settings → Smartphone → Android Auto

#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



## ☒ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB error</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>USB Error</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.
<b>Incompatible USB device</b> <b>Please check owners manual.</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Unsupported ver</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Unsupported Version</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.
<b>Retry connection</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Connect Retry</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable file</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>Unplayable File</b> <sup>*2</sup>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No song</b> <sup>*1</sup> <b>No Data</b> <sup>*2</sup>	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty. <b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV <sup>*2</sup> , or MP4 <sup>*2</sup> files in the USB flash drive. <b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.

\*1:Models with colour audio system

\*2:Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
<b>Unsupported</b> *1, *2	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.

\*1: Models with colour audio system

\*2: Models with Display Audio

Models with Display Audio

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
<b>Unfortunately, **** has stopped.</b>	Error has occurred within app, select <b>OK</b> on the screen to close the app.
<b>**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?</b>	App is not responding. Select <b>Wait</b> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <b>OK</b> to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform <b>Factory Data Reset</b> .  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 356

\*1: \*\*\*\* part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod (5th generation)
iPod classic 80GB/160GB (launch in 2007)
iPod classic 120GB (launch in 2008)
iPod classic 160GB (launch in 2009)
iPod nano (1st to 7th generation) released between 2005 and 2012
iPod touch (1st to 5th generation) released between 2007 and 2012
iPhone 3G/iPhone 3GS/iPhone 4/iPhone 4S/iPhone 5/iPhone 5c <sup>*1</sup> /iPhone 5s <sup>*1</sup> / iPhone 6 <sup>*1</sup> /iPhone 6 Plus <sup>*1</sup>

\*1: Models with Display Audio

### USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV<sup>\*</sup>, or MP4<sup>\*</sup> formats may be unsupported.

### ⌘ iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

<b>Recommended Devices</b>	
<b>Media</b>	USB Flash Drive
<b>Profile (MP4 version)</b>	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)
<b>File extension (MP4 version)</b>	.mp4/.m4v
<b>Compatible audio codec</b>	AAC   MP3
<b>Compatible video codec</b>	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)   MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)
<b>Bit rate</b>	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)   8 Mbps (MPEG4)
<b>Maximum image</b>	720 x 576 pixels

Models with Display Audio

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

---

### OWNER'S MANUAL LICENCE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

## About Open Source Licences

To see the open source licences information, follow these steps.

### Models with colour audio system

1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
2. Rotate  to select **Settings**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **OSS Licenses**, then press .

### Models with Display Audio

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Detailed Information**.
6. Select **About device**.
7. Select **Legal information**.
8. Select **Open-source licences**.

### ►► About Open Source Licences

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Models with Display Audio

## Licence Information

### DOLBY DIGITAL

Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are registered trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.



### DTS

For DTS patents, see <http://patents.dts.com>. Manufactured under license from DTS Licensing Limited. DTS, the Symbol, & DTS and the Symbol together are registered trademarks, and DTS Digital Surround and Neural Surround are trademarks of DTS, Inc. © DTS, Inc. All Rights Reserved.

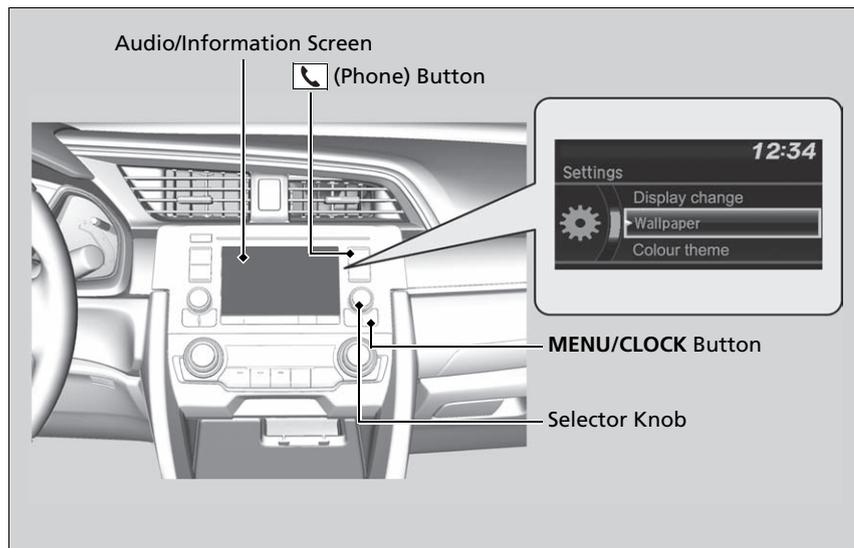


Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

Models with colour audio system

## How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON \*1, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the  button, then select **Phone setup**.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to **P**.

## How to customize

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

Rotate  to select.

Press  to enter.

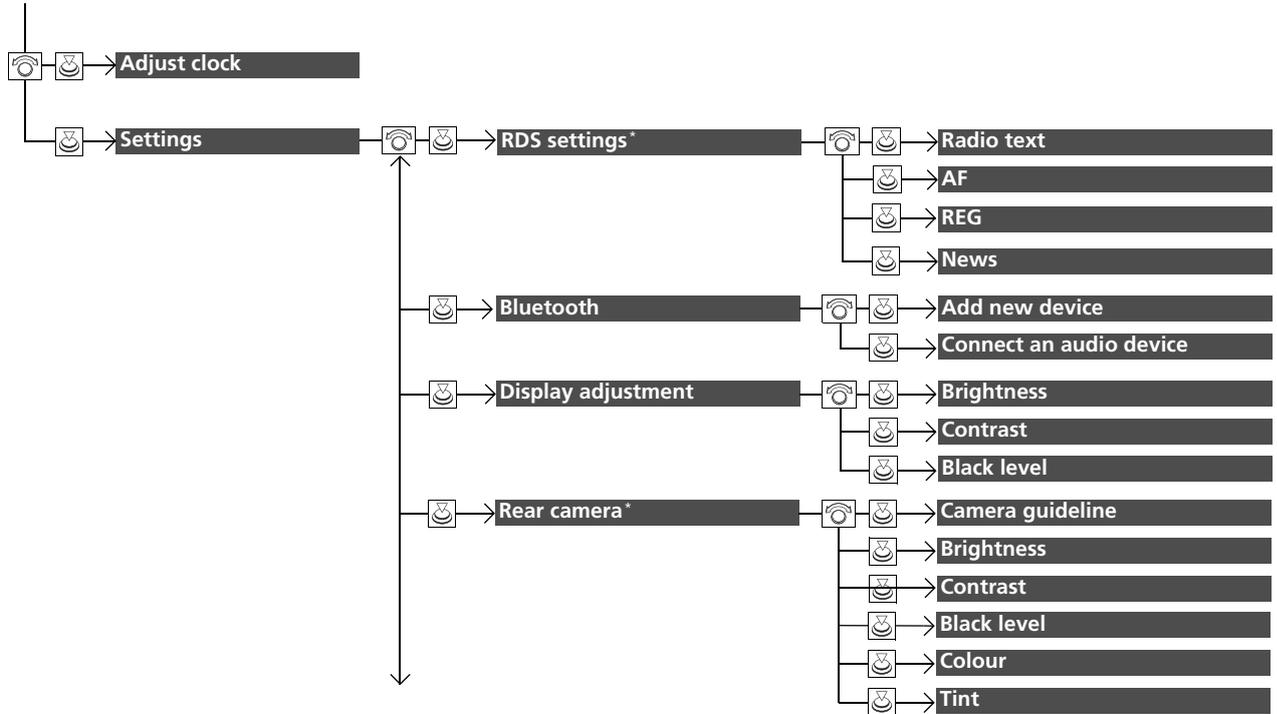
To customize other features, select **Settings**, rotate , then press .

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 328

Models with colour audio system

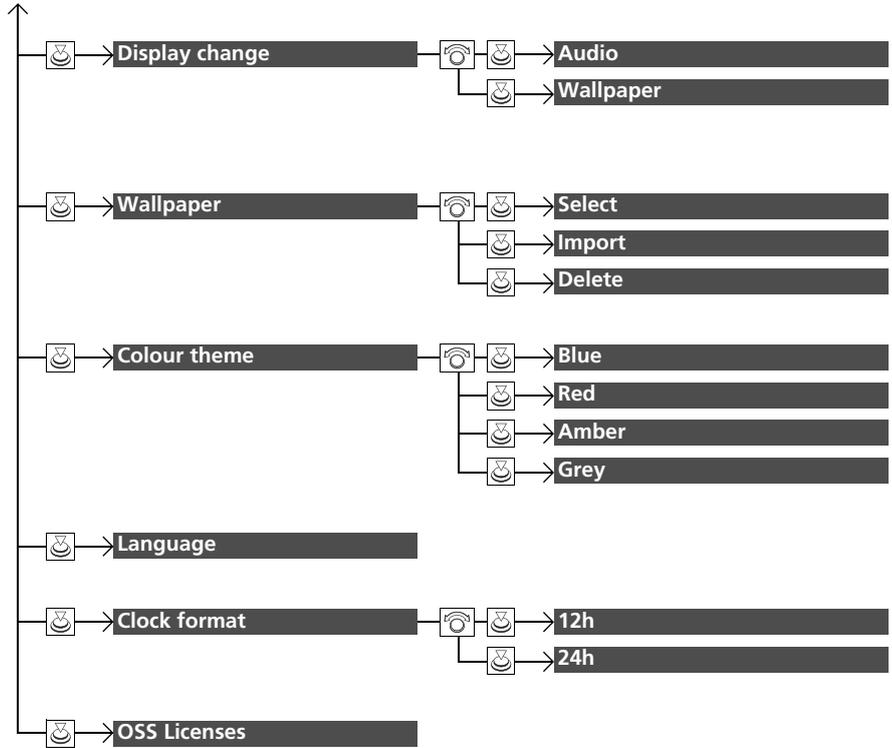
### ■ Customization Flow

Press the MENU/CLOCK button.

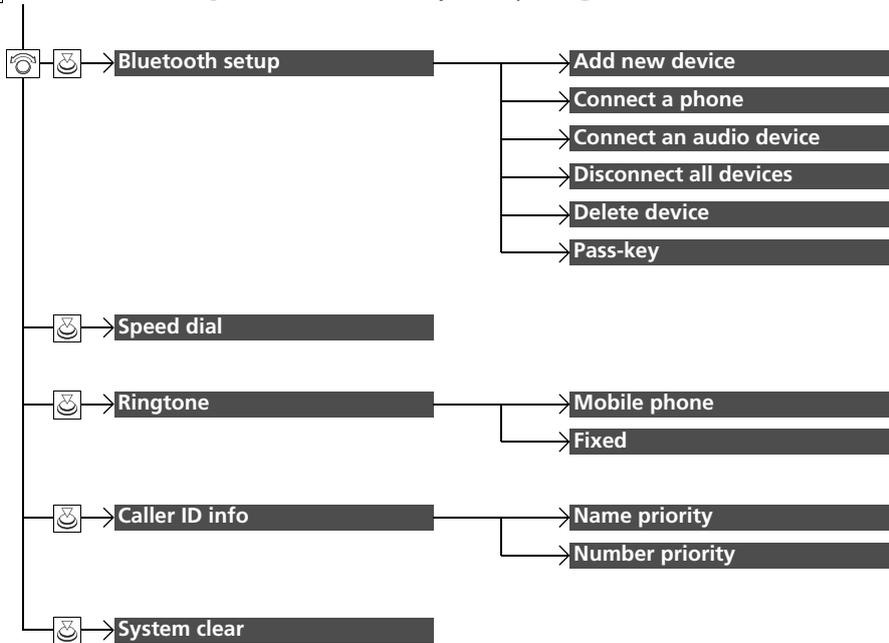


Features

\* Not available on all models



Press the  button and rotate  to select **Phone setup**, then press .



Models with colour audio system

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	<b>Adjust clock</b>	Adjusts clock. ☒ <b>Clock</b> P. 148	—	
	<b>RDS settings*</b>	<b>Radio text</b>	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	On/Off*1
		<b>AF</b>	Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different region.	On*1/Off
		<b>REG</b>	Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On*1/Off
		<b>News</b>	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off*1
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone. ☒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 363	—
		<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	<b>Display adjustment</b>	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Black level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
<b>Settings</b>	<b>Rear camera*</b>	<b>Camera guideline</b>	Selects whether the guidelines come on the audio/information screen.	<b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Brightness</b>		
		<b>Contrast</b>	See <b>Display adjustment</b> on P. 328	
		<b>Black level</b>		
		<b>Colour</b>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen.	—
	<b>Tint</b>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	—	

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Settings	<b>Display change</b>	Changes the display type.	<b>Audio<sup>*1</sup>/Wallpaper</b>	
	<b>Select</b>	Changes the wallpaper type.	<b>Clock<sup>*1</sup>/Image 1/Image 2/Image 3</b>	
	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<b>Import</b>	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. 📁 <b>Wallpaper Setup</b> P. 244	—
		<b>Delete</b>	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	<b>Image 1<sup>*1</sup>/Image 2/Image 3</b>
	<b>Colour theme</b>	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	<b>Blue<sup>*1</sup>/Red/Amber/Grey</b>	
	<b>Language</b>	Changes the display language.	<b>Vietnamese models</b>	<b>US English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>
			<b>Latin American, Oceanian, Southeast Asia models</b>	<b>UK English<sup>*1</sup>/Thai/Malay/Indonesian</b>
			<b>Thai models</b>	<b>Thai<sup>*1</sup>/UK English/Malay/Indonesian</b>
			<b>African models</b>	<b>UK English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>
			<b>UK English<sup>*1</sup>/French/Spanish</b>	
<b>Clock format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12h<sup>*1</sup>/24h</b>		
<b>OSS licenses</b>	Shows the legal information.	—		

\*1: Default Setting

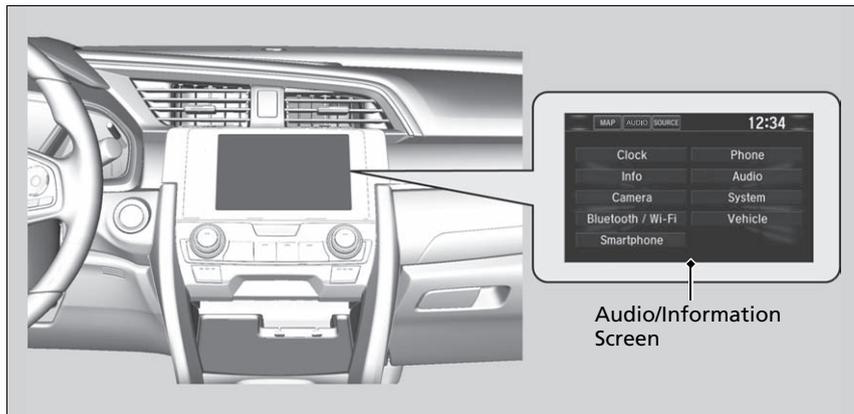
Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Phone setup	<b>Add new device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 363	—
	<b>Connect a phone</b>	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. ▶ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 363	—
	<b>Connect an audio device</b>	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	—
	<b>Disconnect all devices</b>	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.	—
	<b>Delete device</b>	Deletes a paired phone.	—
	<b>Pass-key</b>	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.	—
	<b>Speed dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. ▶ <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 372	—
	<b>Ringtone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Mobile phone</b> *1/ <b>Fixed</b>
	<b>Caller ID info</b>	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	<b>Name priority</b> *1/ <b>Number priority</b>
	<b>System clear</b>	Cancel/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone setup</b> group as default.	—

\*1:Default Setting

Models with Display Audio

■ **How to customize**

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the ignition switch in ON \*1, select  and **Settings**, then select a setting item.



▶▶ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to .

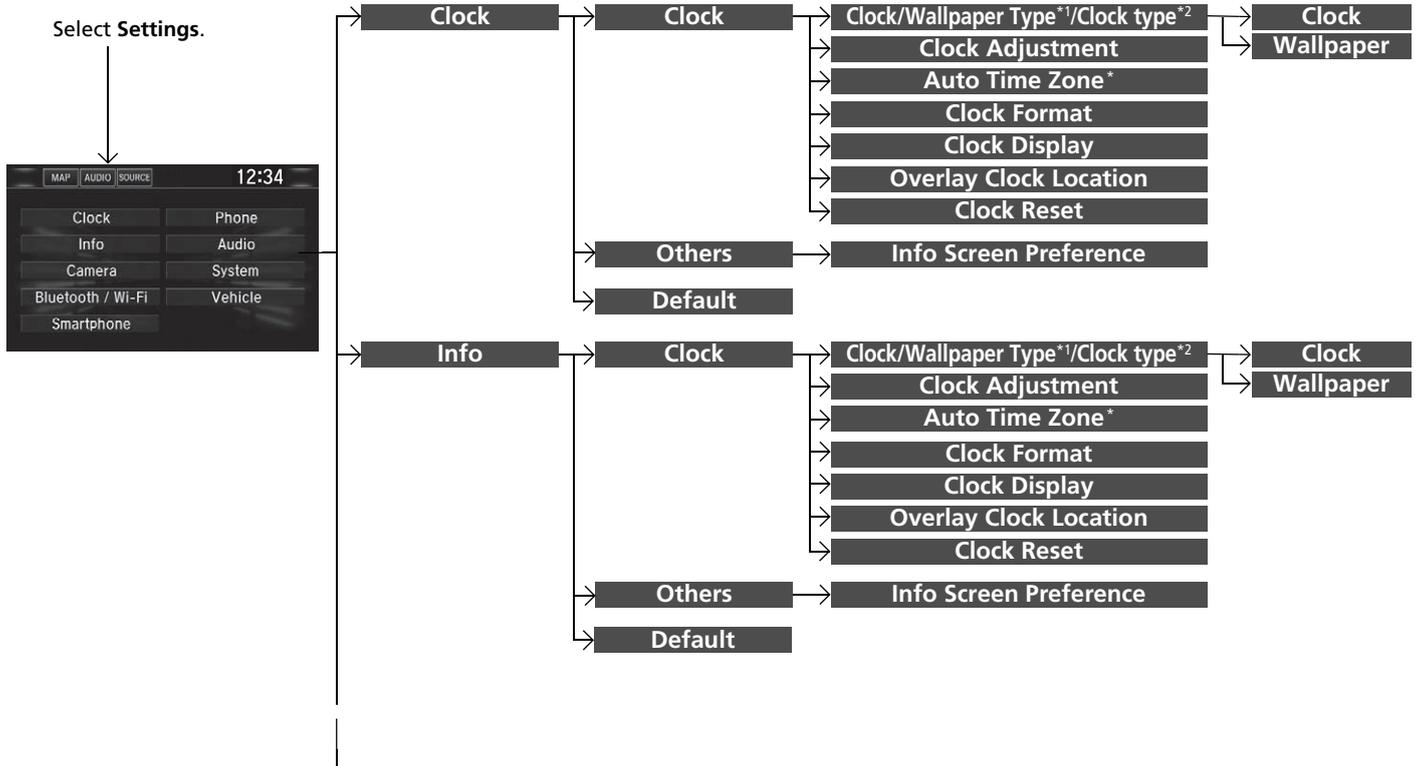
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

▶ **List of customizable options** P. 340

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with Display Audio

■ Customization flow

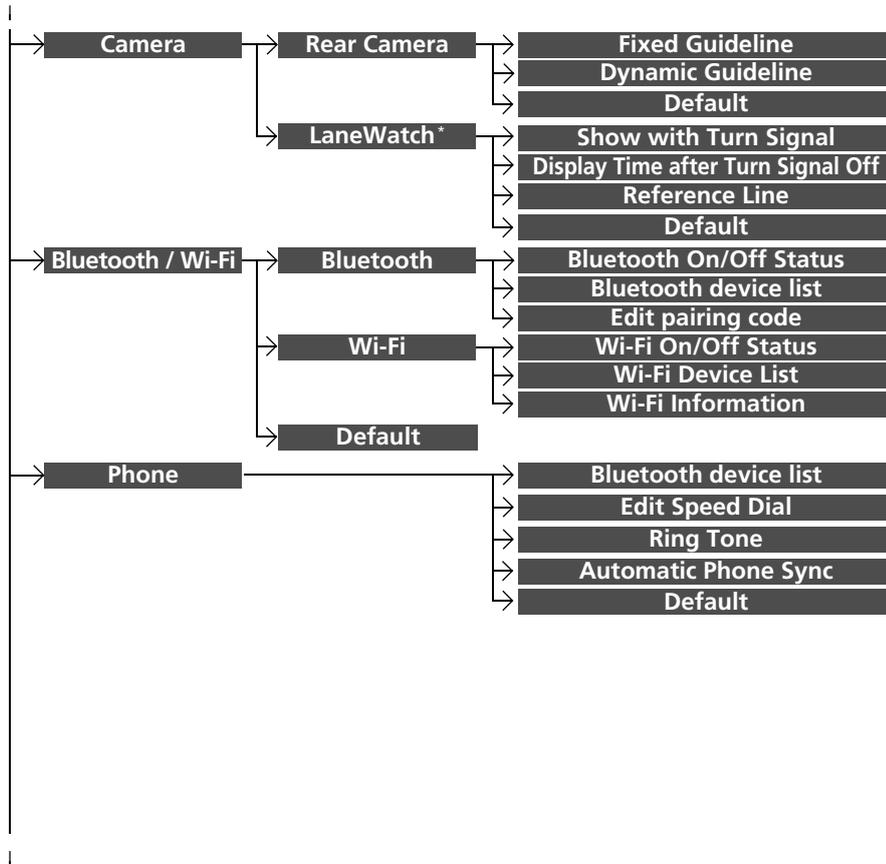


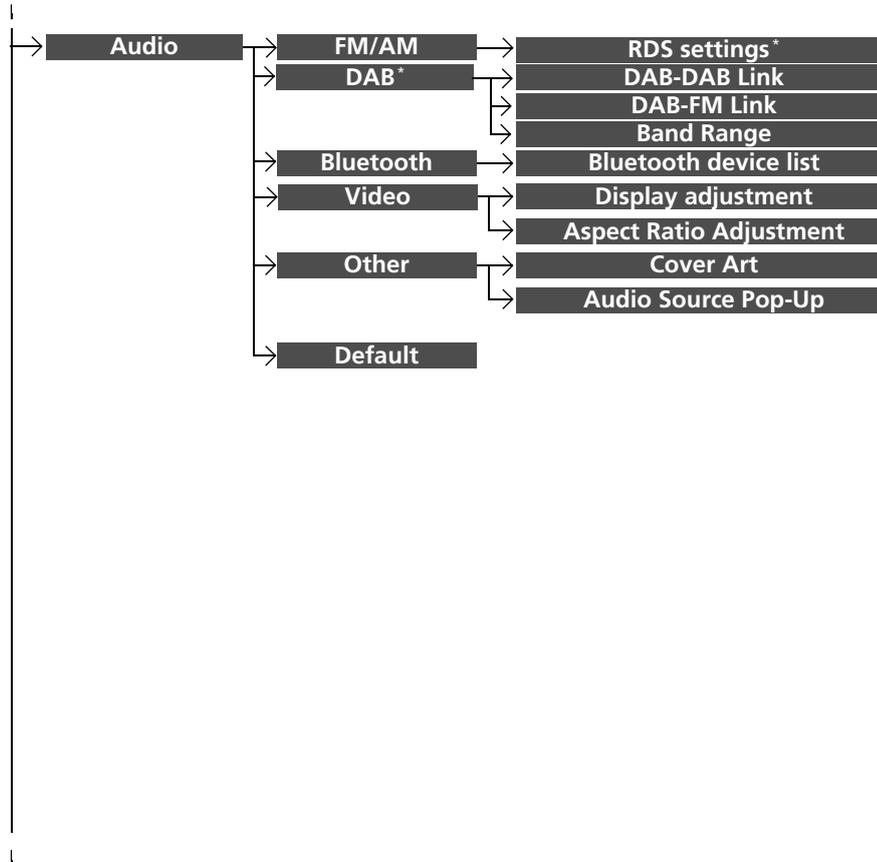
\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

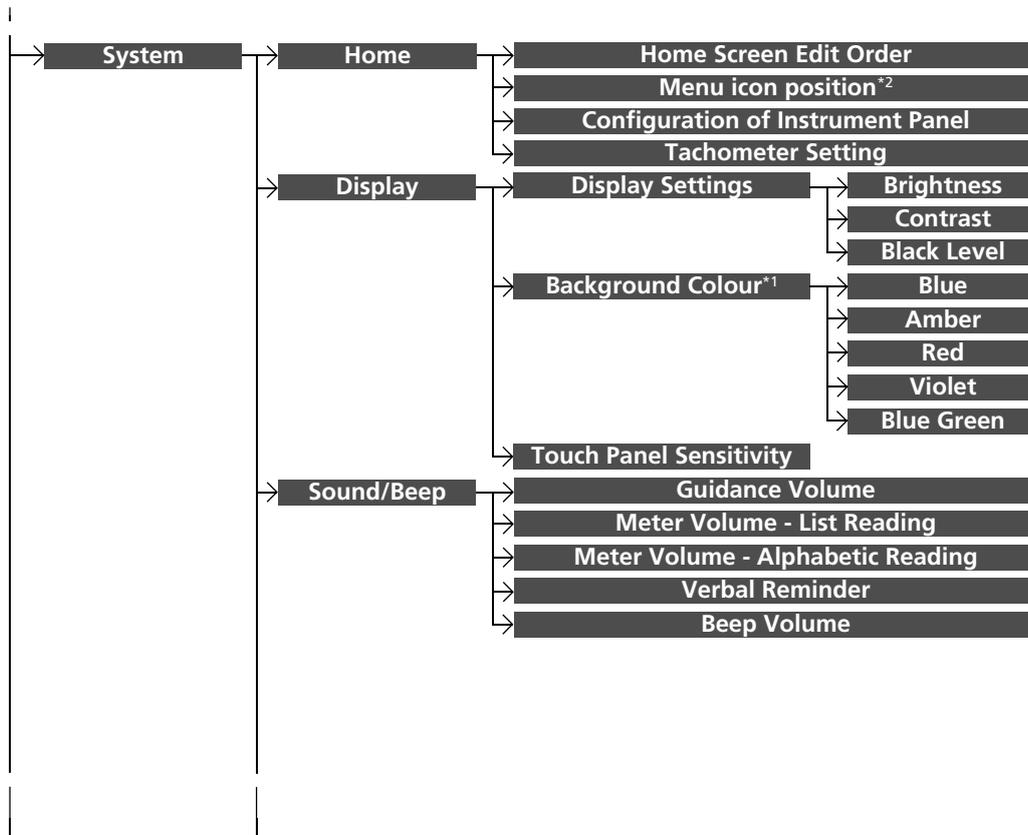
\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

Features

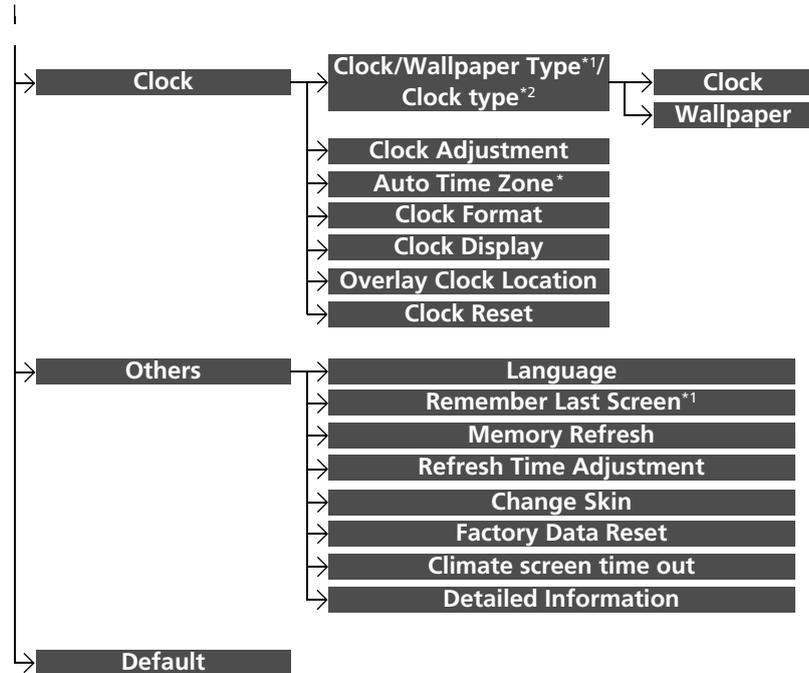






\*1 : Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

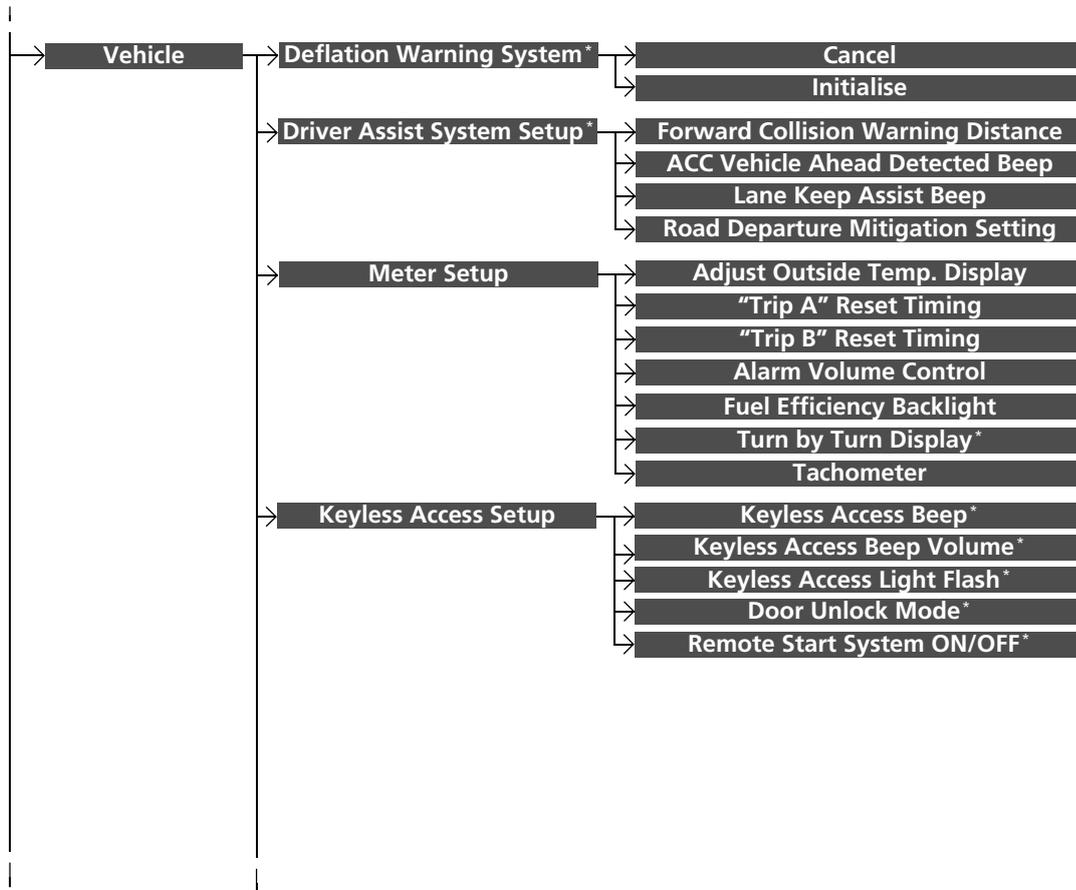
\*2 : Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

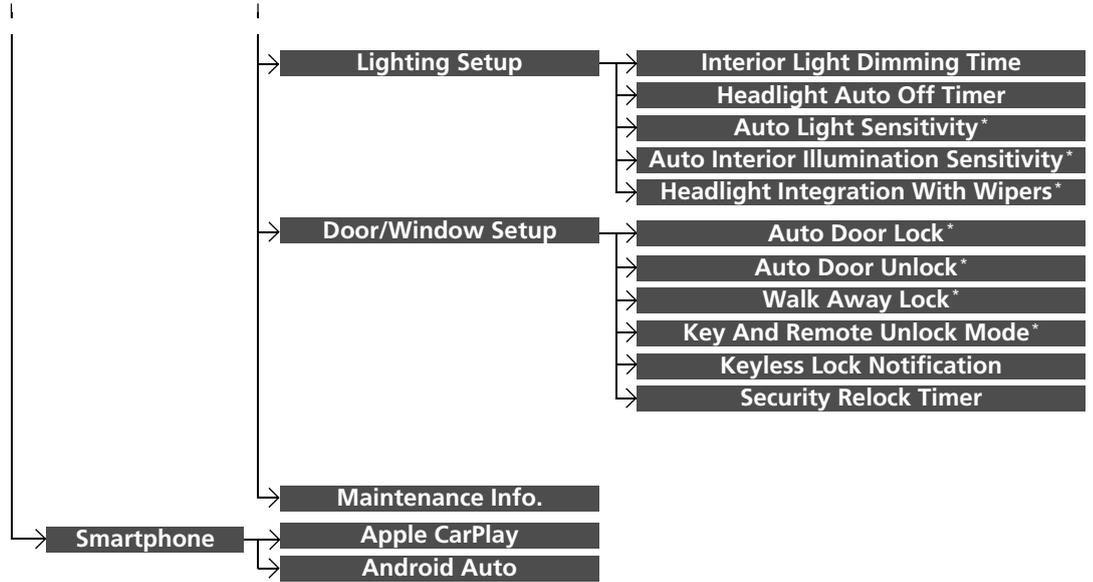


\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models





Features

\* Not available on all models

Models with Display Audio

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
Clock	<b>Clock/Wallpaper Type<sup>*1</sup>/Clock type<sup>*2</sup></b> <table border="1" style="margin-left: 20px;"> <tr> <td><b>Clock</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>Wallpaper</b></td> </tr> </table>	<b>Clock</b>	<b>Wallpaper</b>	See <b>Info</b> on P. 341	
	<b>Clock</b>				
	<b>Wallpaper</b>				
	<b>Clock Adjustment</b>				
	<b>Auto Time Zone<sup>*</sup></b>				
	<b>Clock Format</b>				
	<b>Clock Display</b>				
	<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>				
<b>Clock Reset</b>					
<b>Others</b>	<b>Info Screen Preference</b>				
<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Clock</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>		

\*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings		
Info	Clock	<b>Clock/ Wallpaper Type<sup>*2/</sup></b>	<b>Clock</b>	Changes the clock display type.	<b>Analog/Digital<sup>*1/</sup> Small Digital/Off</b>
		<b>Clock type<sup>*3</sup></b>	<b>Wallpaper</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Changes the wallpaper type.</li> <li>• Imports an image file for a new wallpaper.</li> <li>• Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.</li> </ul>	<b>Blank/Galaxy<sup>*1/</sup> Metallic/Time zone*</b>
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>		Adjusts Clock.	—
		<b>Auto Time Zone*</b>		Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	<b>On<sup>*1/</sup>Off</b>
		<b>Clock Format</b>		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	<b>12H<sup>*1/</sup>24H</b>
		<b>Clock Display</b>		Selects whether the clock display comes on.	<b>On<sup>*1/</sup>Off</b>
		<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>		Changes the clock display layout.	<b>Right Upper<sup>*1/</sup>Left Upper/Right Lower/ Left Lower/Off</b>
<b>Clock Reset</b>		Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	<b>Yes/No</b>		

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Info	Others	<b>Info Screen Preference</b>	Selects the top menu when the  button is pressed. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Info Top</b>- A brief menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Info Menu</b>- A full menu pops up.</li> <li>• <b>Off</b>- A menu does not pop up.</li> </ul>	<b>Info Top/Info Menu<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Info</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
Camera	Rear Camera	<b>Fixed Guideline</b>	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☑ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 491</li> </ul>	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Dynamic Guideline</b>	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>☑ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 491</li> </ul>	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Rear Camera</b> setting group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	LaneWatch *	<b>Show with Turn Signal</b>	Selects whether the LaneWatch display comes on when you move the turn signal lever to indicate a right turn.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
		<b>Display Time after Turn Signal Off</b>	Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after the turn signal lever returns to the centre.	<b>0 seconds<sup>*1</sup>/ 2 seconds</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Camera	<b>Reference Line</b>	Selects whether the reference lines come on the LaneWatch monitor.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off	
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>LaneWatch</b> group as default.	Yes/No	
Bluetooth / Wi-Fi	<b>Bluetooth On/Off Status</b>	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® status.	On <sup>*1</sup> /Off	
	Bluetooth	<b>Bluetooth device list</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ☞ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 385	—
		<b>Edit pairing code</b>	Edits a pairing code. ☞ <b>To change the pairing code setting</b> P. 386	Random/Fixed <sup>*1</sup>
	Wi-Fi	<b>Wi-Fi On/Off Status</b>	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On/Off <sup>*1</sup>
		<b>Wi-Fi Device List</b>	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	—
		<b>Wi-Fi Information</b>	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.	—
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Bluetooth / Wi-Fi</b> group as default.	Yes/No	

\* 1: Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	<b>Bluetooth device list</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 385	—
	<b>Edit Speed Dial</b>	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry.  <b>Speed Dial</b> P. 390	—
<b>Phone</b>	<b>Ring Tone</b>	Selects the ring tone.	<b>Fixed/Mobile phone*1</b>
	<b>Automatic Phone Sync</b>	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Default</b>	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Phone</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Audio	FM/AM mode FM/AM	RDS settings*	<b>TA Information</b>	Turns on and off the traffic information. <b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
		RDS settings*	<b>News</b>	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme. <b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
			<b>REG</b>	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak. <b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
			<b>AF</b>	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions. <b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
	DAB mode DAB	DAB-DAB Link		Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it. <b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
			DAB-FM Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band. <b>On*<sup>1</sup>/Off</b>
		Band Range	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station. <b>BOTH*<sup>1</sup>/ BAND III/ L-BAND</b>	
	Bluetooth® mode Bluetooth	Bluetooth device list	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. ☒ <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 385	—

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
	<b>Display adjustment</b> USB or HDMI™ mode	<b>Brightness</b> <b>Contrast</b> <b>Black Level</b>	See <b>System</b> on P. 347	
		<b>Colour</b>	<b>Colour</b>	Changes the colour of the audio/information screen. —
			<b>Tint</b>	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen. —
	<b>Video</b>	<b>Aspect Ratio Adjustment</b>	Selects a display mode with a different aspect ratio: <b>Original</b> (only USB), <b>Normal</b> , <b>Full</b> or <b>Zoom</b> .	<b>Original</b> * <sup>1</sup> (only USB)/ <b>Normal/Full/Zoom</b>
	<b>Audio</b>	iPod or USB mode [Your selected media] <b>Cover Art</b>	Turns the cover art display on and off.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
<b>Audio Source Pop-Up</b>		Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when <b>Audio</b> is selected on the home screen.	<b>On/Off</b> * <sup>1</sup>	
<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>Audio</b> settings group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>	

\*1: Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Home	<b>Home Screen Edit Order</b>	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—	
	<b>Menu icon position</b> *2	Changes the position of the menu icons on the <b>Audio, Phone,</b> and <b>Info</b> screen.	—	
	<b>Configuration of Instrument Panel</b>	Changes the <b>Instrument Panel</b> screen icon layout.	—	
	<b>Tachometer Setting</b>	Turns on and off the tachometer display.	<b>On</b> *1/ <b>Off</b>	
System	<b>Display Settings</b>	<b>Brightness</b>	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Contrast</b>	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		<b>Black Level</b>	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	<b>Display</b>	<b>Background Colour</b> *2	Changes the background colour of the audio/information screen.	<b>Blue/Amber/Red/Violet/Blue Green</b> *1 RS and Sport grade models <b>Blue/Amber/Red</b> *1/ <b>Violet/Blue Green</b>
	<b>Touch Panel Sensitivity</b>	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	<b>High/Low</b> *1	

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Sound/ Beep	<b>Guidance Volume</b>	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	<b>00~6*1~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - List Reading</b>	Changes the list reading volume.	<b>00~6*1~11</b>
		<b>Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading</b>	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	<b>00~6*1~11</b>
		<b>Verbal Reminder</b>	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	<b>On*1/Off</b>
		<b>Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep volume.	<b>Off/1/2*1/3</b>
	Clock	<b>Clock/Wallpaper Type*2/Clock type*3</b>	<b>Clock</b> <b>Wallpaper</b>	See <b>Info</b> on P. 341
		<b>Clock Adjustment</b>		
		<b>Auto Time Zone*</b>		
		<b>Clock Format</b>		
		<b>Clock Display</b>		
<b>Overlay Clock Location</b>				
<b>Clock Reset</b>				

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

\*3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>System Others</b>	<b>Language</b>	Change the display language.	<b>UK English<sup>*1</sup>/US English/ French/Spanish/ Portuguese/Brazilian Portuguese/Russian/ Chinese/Arabic/ Indonesian/Malay/Thai/ Turkish/Korean</b>
	<b>Remember Last Screen<sup>*3</sup></b>	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	<b>On/Off<sup>*1</sup></b>
	<b>Memory Refresh</b>	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the ignition switch is LOCK <input type="checkbox"/> <sup>*2</sup> .	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Refresh Time Adjustment</b>	Sets the time for <b>Memory Refresh</b> .	—

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\*3:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>System</b>	<b>Change Skin</b>	Changes the screen interface design.	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default.  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 356	<b>Yes/No</b>
	<b>Others</b>		
	<b>Climate screen time out</b>	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the <b>CLIMATE</b> button.	<b>Never/5 seconds/10 seconds<sup>*1</sup>/20 seconds</b>
	<b>Detailed Information</b>	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	—
<b>Default</b>		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the <b>System</b> group as default.	<b>Yes/No</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Deflation Warning System*</b>	Initialises the deflation warning system.	<b>Cancel*<sup>1</sup>/Initialise</b>
	<b>Forward Collision Warning Distance</b>	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance.	<b>Far/Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Near</b>
	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Lane Keep Assist Beep</b>	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	<b>On/Off*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting</b>	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	<b>Normal*<sup>1</sup>/Delayed/Warning Only</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle Meter Setup	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C* <sup>1</sup> ~ +3°C
	<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	<b>When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	<b>When Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset</b> * <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Min</b>
	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Turn by Turn Display*</b>	Used to select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>
	<b>Tachometer</b>	Selects whether the tachometer comes on the driver information interface.	<b>On</b> * <sup>1</sup> / <b>Off</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Keyless Access Beep*</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Beep Volume*</b>	Changes the keyless access beep volume.	<b>High<sup>*1</sup>/Low</b>
	<b>Keyless Access Light Flash*</b>	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Door Unlock Mode*</b>	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	<b>Driver Door Only<sup>*1</sup>/All Doors</b>
	<b>Remote Start System ON/OFF*</b>	Turns the remote engine start feature on and off.	<b>On<sup>*1</sup>/Off</b>
	<b>Interior Light Dimming Time</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>60sec/30sec<sup>*1</sup>/15sec</b>
	<b>Headlight Auto Off Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>60sec/30sec/15sec<sup>*1</sup>/0sec</b>
	<b>Auto Light Sensitivity*</b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	<b>Max/High/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/Low/Min</b>
	<b>Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity*</b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> .	<b>Min/Low/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/High/Max</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Lighting Setup</b>	<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers*</b>	Used to automatically come on the headlights when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> . <b>On*1/Off</b>
	<b>Door/Window Setup</b>	<b>Auto Door Lock*</b>	Used to change the setting for when the doors automatically lock. <b>With Vehicle Speed*1/Shift From P/Off</b>
		<b>Auto Door Unlock*</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors automatically unlock. <b>Malaysian models</b> <b>Shift to P*1/IGN Off/Off</b> <b>African models</b> <b>Driver Door with Shift to P*1/All Doors with Shift to P/Driver Door with IGN Off/All Doors with IGN Off/Off</b>
		<b>Walk Away Lock*</b>	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle. <b>On/Off*1</b>
		<b>Key And Remote Unlock Mode*</b>	Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote. <b>Driver Door Only*1/All Doors</b>
		<b>Keyless Lock Notification</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds. <b>On*1/Off</b>
		<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door. <b>90sec/60sec/30sec*1</b>

\*1:Default Setting

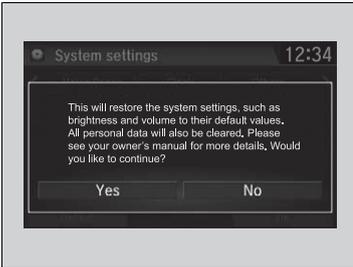
\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Vehicle</b>	<b>Maintenance Info.</b>	Used to reset the engine oil life display when the maintenance service has been performed.	—
<b>Smart-phone</b>	<b>Apple CarPlay</b>	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
	<b>Android Auto</b>	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—

Models with Display Audio

## Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select the **Others** tab.
5. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
6. Select **Yes** to reset the settings.
7. Select **Yes** again to reset the settings.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
  - After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

### ►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

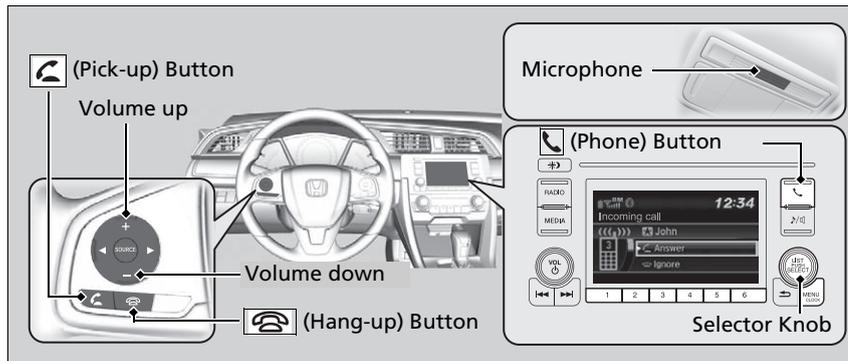
# Hands-Free Telephone System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Models with colour audio system

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



**(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

**(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call or to cancel a command.

**(Phone) button:** Press to go directly to the phone screen.

**Selector knob:** Rotate  to select an item on the screen, then press .

### Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

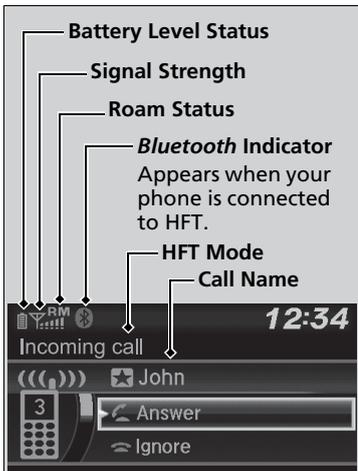
If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled.

**Speed Dial** P. 372

Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

## HFT Status Display



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

## Hands-Free Telephone System

### Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## HFT Status Display

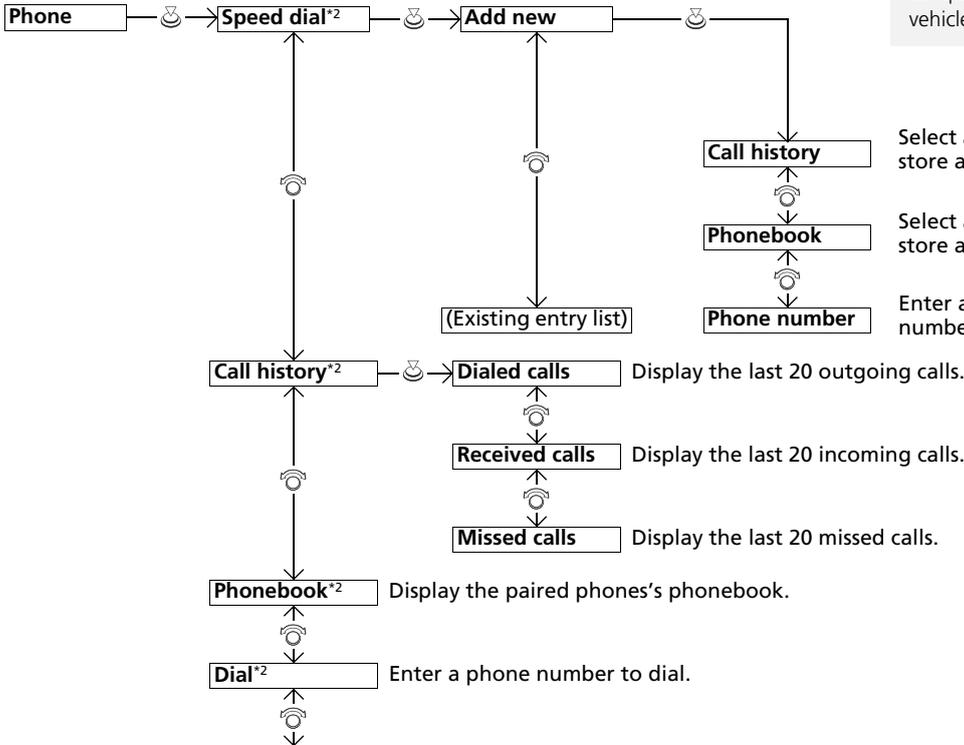
The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 324

# HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY **I** or ON **II** to use HFT.\*1



☒ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Select a phone number from the call history to store as a speed dial number.

Select a phone number from the phonebook to store as a speed dial number.

Enter a phone number to store as a speed dial number.

Display the last 20 outgoing calls.

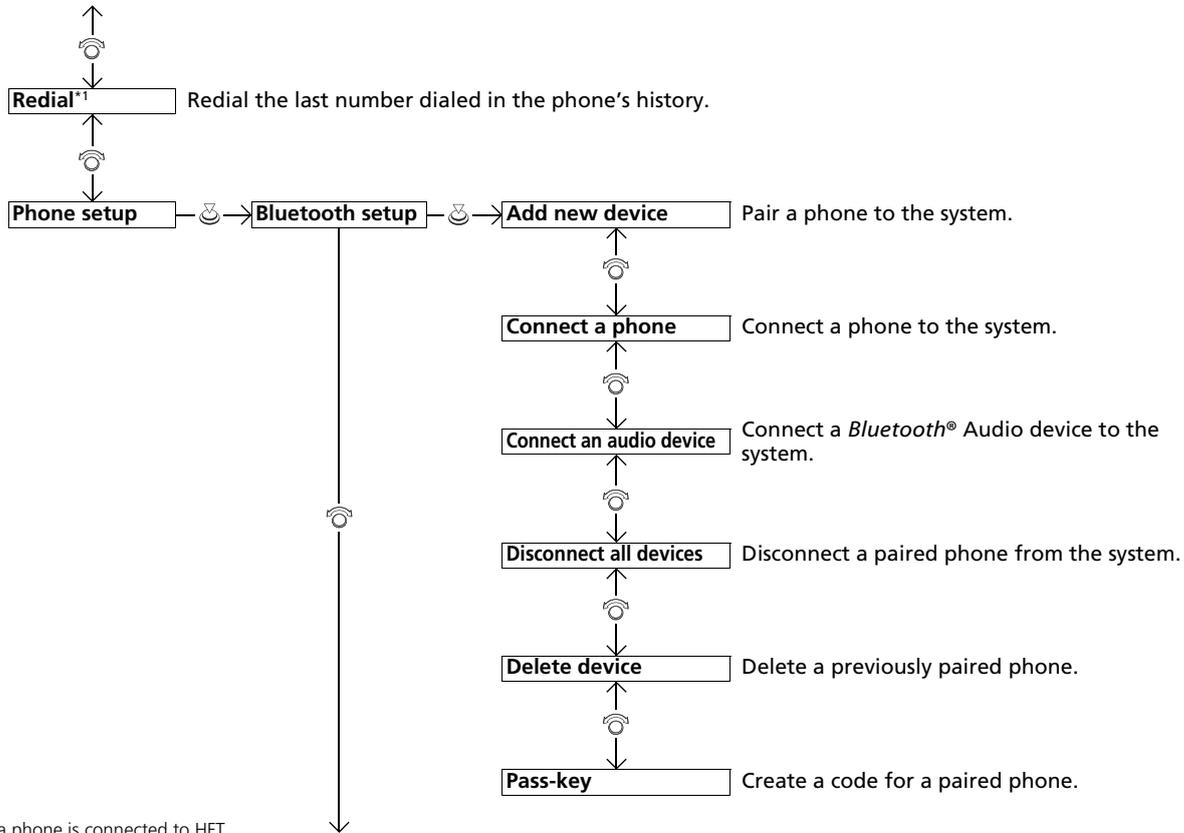
Display the last 20 incoming calls.

Display the last 20 missed calls.

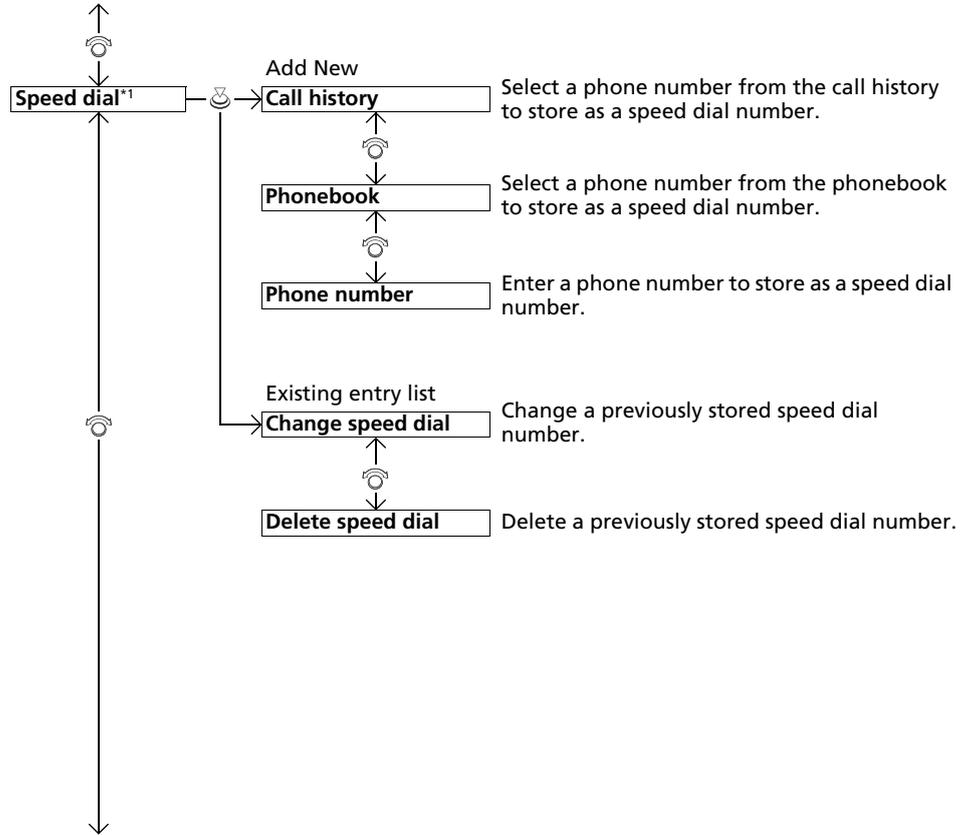
Display the paired phones's phonebook.

Enter a phone number to dial.

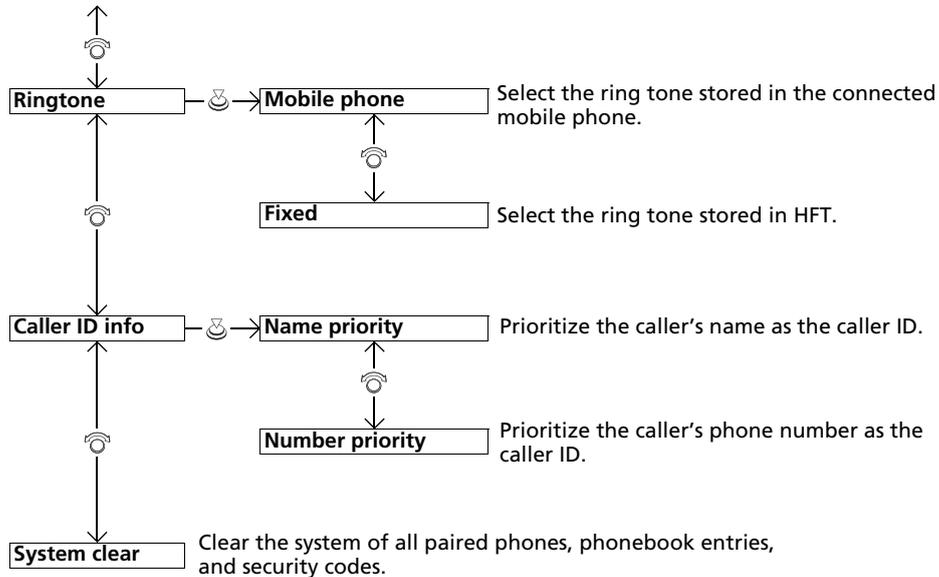
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.  
 \*2: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



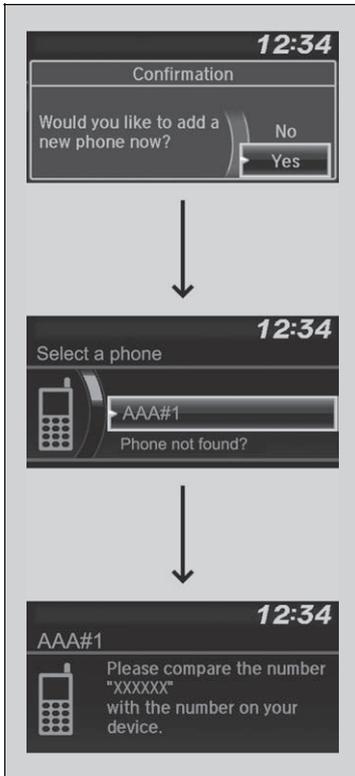
\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



\*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone doesn't appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.
6. A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

### ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.

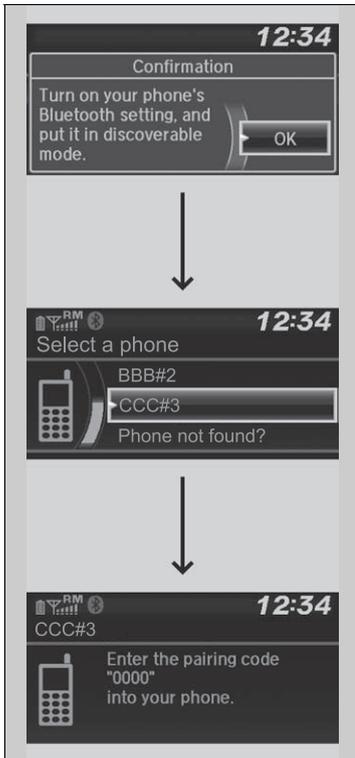
: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

Continued

■ To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)

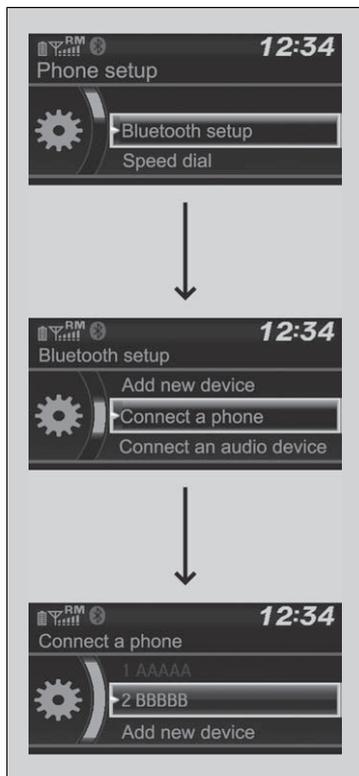


1. Press the button or the button.
  - ▶ If a prompt appears asking to connect to a phone, select **No** and proceed with step 2.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Add new device**, then press .
- ▶ The screen changes to device list.
5. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .



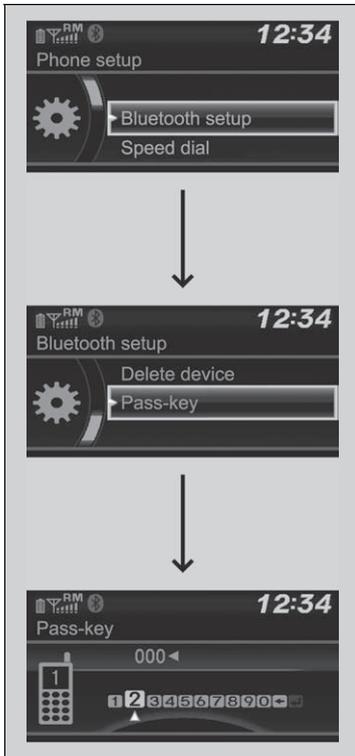
6. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press .
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> device.
  
7. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing .
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, select **Phone not found?** and search for *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> devices using your phone. From your phone, select **Honda HFT**.
  
8. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.

Continued



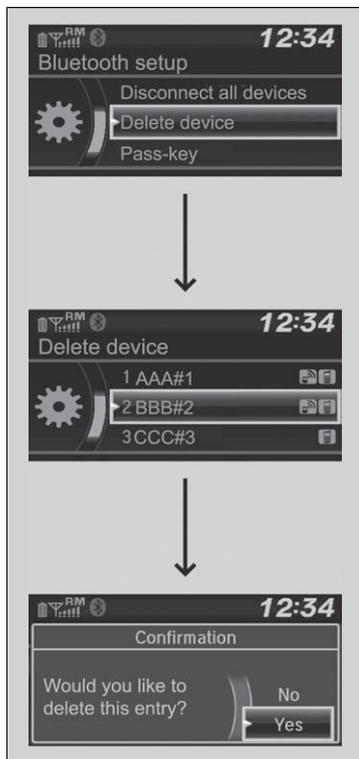
■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Press the  button or the  button.
2. Rotate  to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate  to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate  to select **Connect a phone**, then press 
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate  to select a desired device name, then press 
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



### ■ To change the pairing code setting

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Pass-key**, then press .
5. Input a new pairing code, then press .



■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Delete device**, then press .
  - ▶ The screen changes to a device list.
5. Rotate to select a phone you want to delete, then press .
6. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## Ring Tone

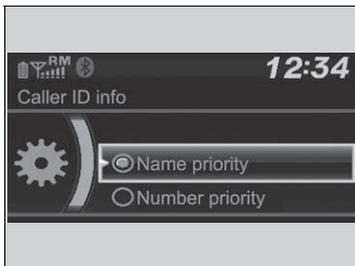
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Ringtone**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Mobile phone** or **Fixed**, then press .

## Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Caller ID info**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a mode you want, then press .

### Ring Tone

**Mobile phone:** For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

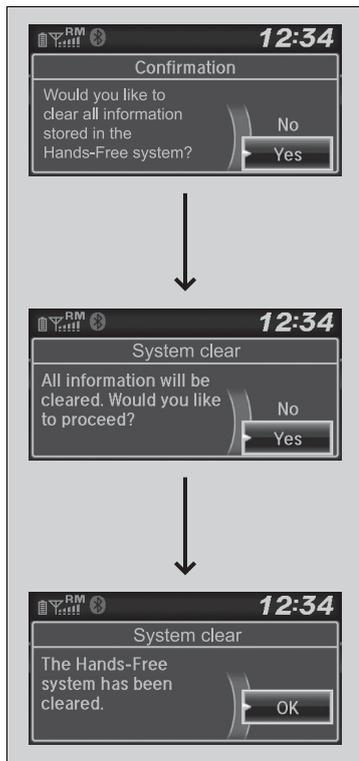
### Caller's ID Information

**Name priority:** A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

**Number priority:** A caller's phone number is displayed.

## ■ To Clear the System

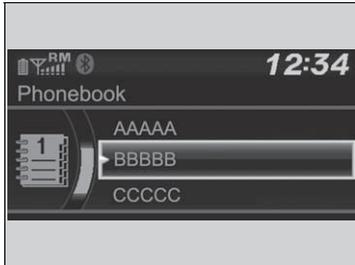
Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.



1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **System clear**, then press .
4. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .
6. A notification appears on the screen. Press .

## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



### Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



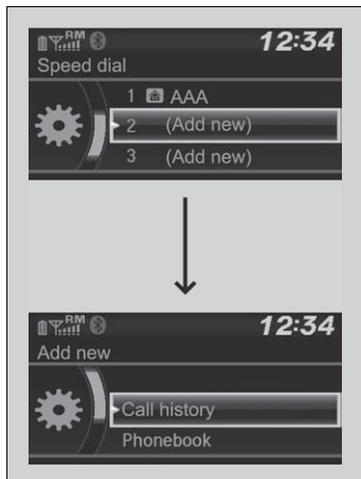
If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.



To store a speed dial number:

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Add new**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a place to choose a number from, then press .

From **Call history**:

- ▶ Select a number from the call history.

From **Phonebook**:

- ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

From **Phone number**:

- ▶ Input the number manually.



### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Change speed dial**, then press .
6. Select a new speed dial number, then press .

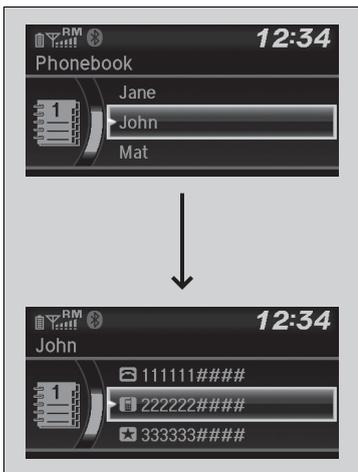
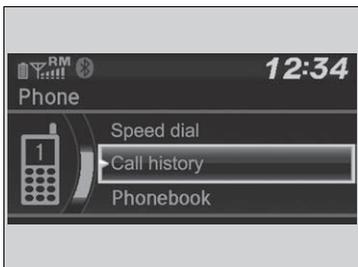


### ■ To delete a speed dial number

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Phone setup**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
5. Rotate to select **Delete speed dial**, then press .
  - ▶ A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press .

## ■ Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



### ■ To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

1. Press the button or the button.
  2. Rotate to select **Phonebook**, then press .
  3. The phonebook is stored alphabetically. Rotate to select the initial, then press .
  4. Rotate to select a name, then press .
  5. Rotate to select a number, then press .
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

### ▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.



■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
4. Rotate to select , then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using redial**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Redial**, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using the call history**

Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, and **Missed calls**.

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Call history**, then press .
3. Rotate to select **Dialed calls**, **Received calls**, or **Missed calls**, then press .
4. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☒ To make a call using redial

Press and hold the button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

☒ To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

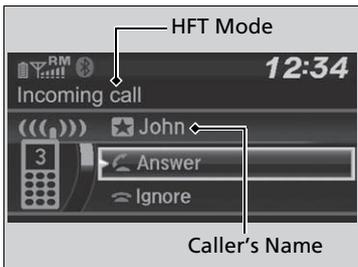
Continued



■ **To make a call using a speed dial entry**

1. Press the button or the button.
2. Rotate to select **Speed dial**, then press .
3. Rotate to select a number, then press .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■ **Receiving a Call**



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

- Press the button to answer the call.  
 Press the button to decline or end the call.

▶▶ To make a call using a speed dial entry

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

▶▶ Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the and buttons. Rotate to select the icon, then press .

## Options During a Call

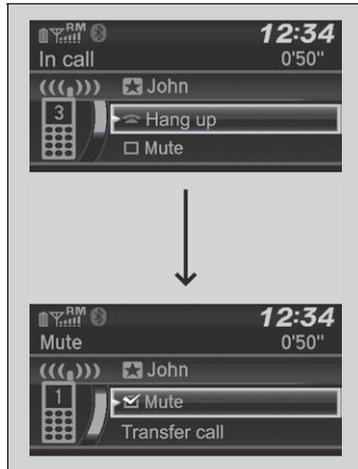
The following options are available during a call.

**Swap call:** Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer call:** Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.

**Dial tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



1. To view the available options, press the  button.
2. Rotate  to select the option, then press .
  - ▶ The check box is checked when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

### Options During a Call

**Dial tones:** Available on some phones.

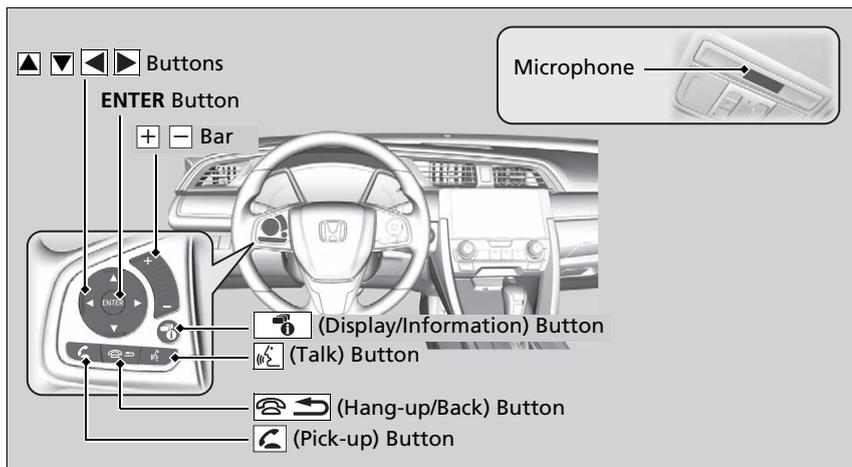
# Hands-Free Telephone System

## Models with Display Audio

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



### Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, HFT is unavailable.

➤ **How to customize** P. 324

#### Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to five speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.

➤ **Speed Dial** P. 390

Up to five previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up/back) button:** Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:** Press to access Voice Portal.

 **buttons:** Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

**ENTER button:** Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

 **(Display/information) button:** Select and press **ENTER** to display **Speed Dial**, **Call History**, or **Phonebook** on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the **Phone Menu** screen:

1. Select .
2. Select **Phone** to switch the display to the phone screen.
3. Select .

#### Hands-Free Telephone System

##### *Bluetooth*® Wireless Technology

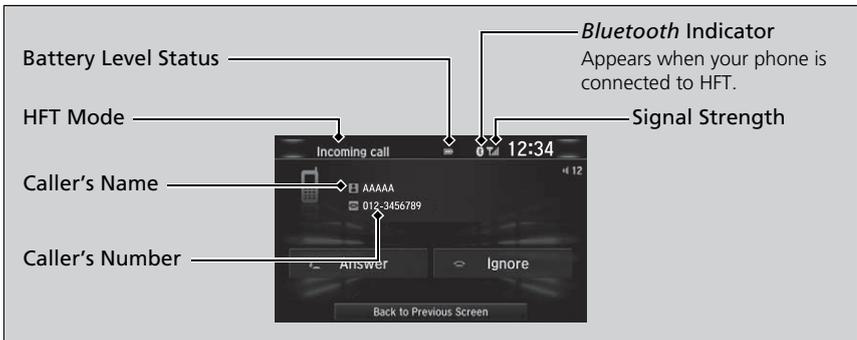
The *Bluetooth*® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

##### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 390

## ▶ HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language.

▶ **How to customize** P. 324

# HFT Menus

The ignition switch must be in ACCESSORY  or ON  to use HFT.\*<sup>1</sup>

## ■ Phone settings screen

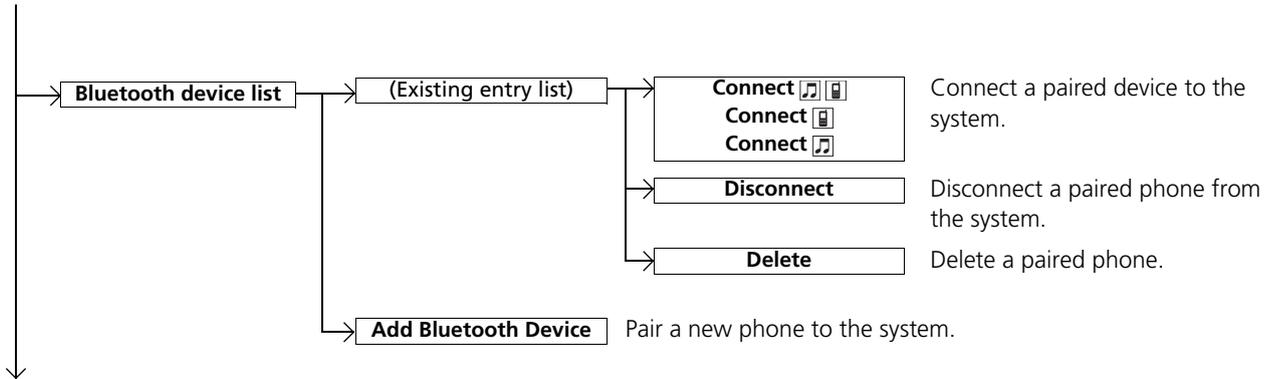


1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Phone**.

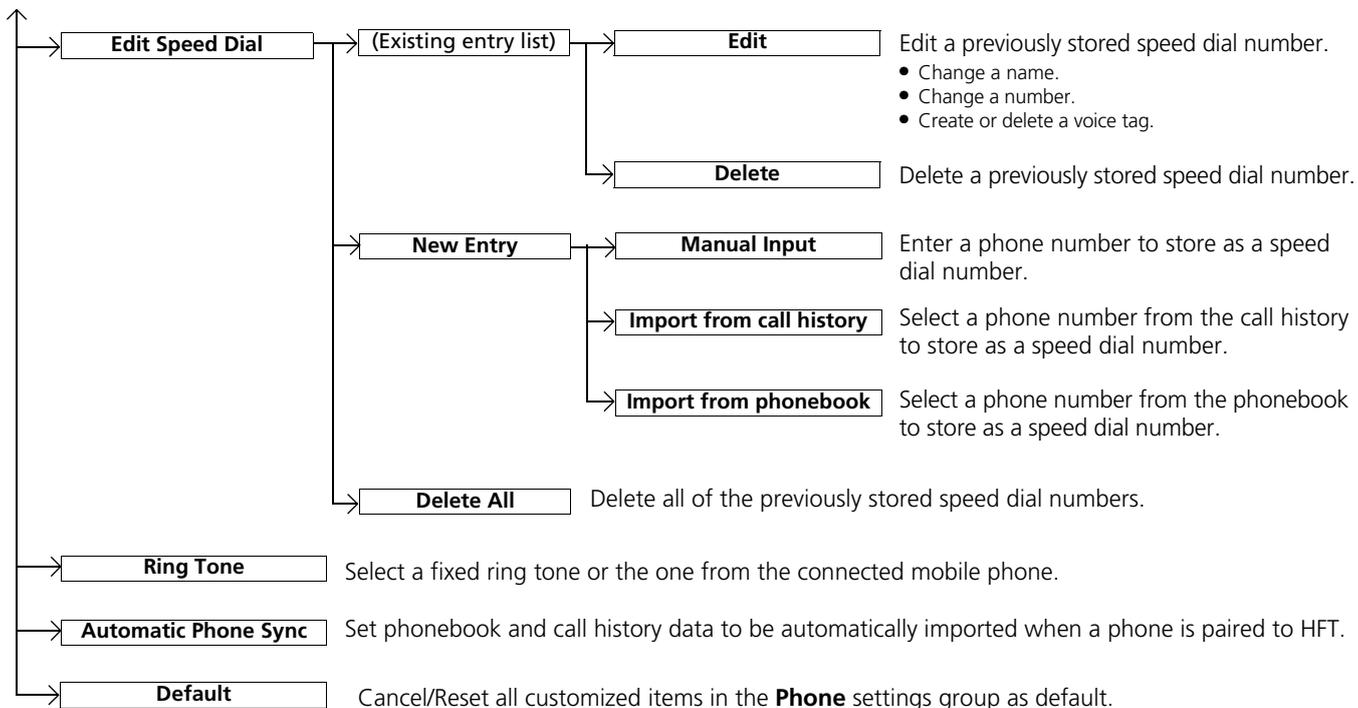
 HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

Some functions are limited while driving.



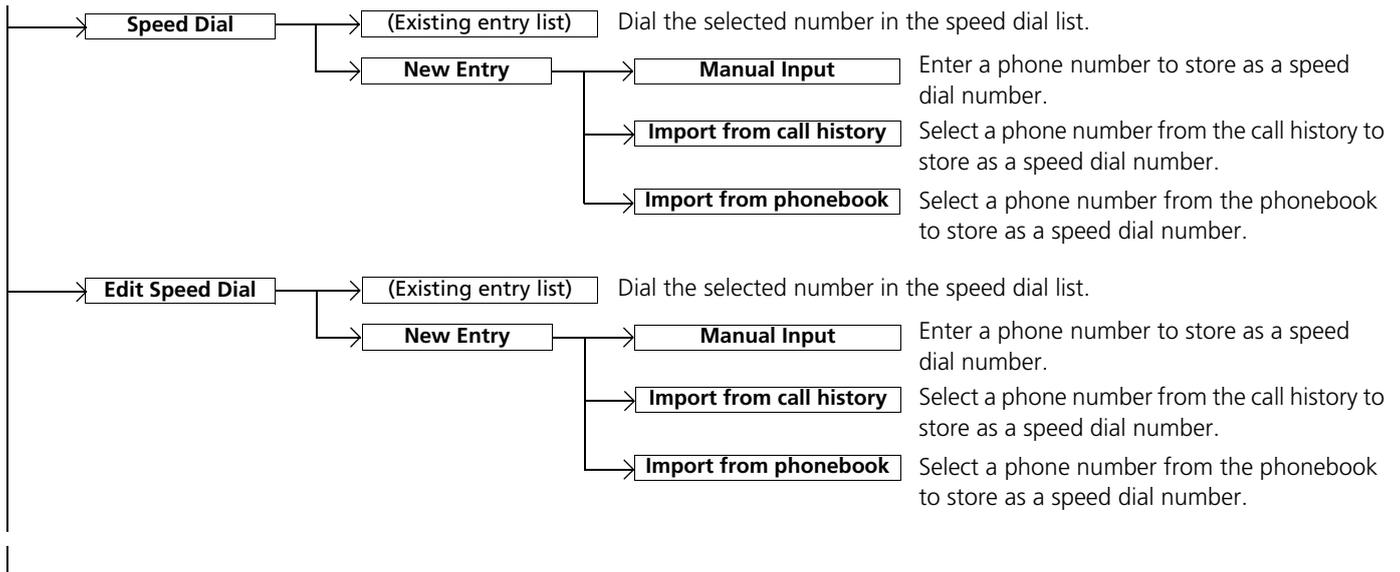
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

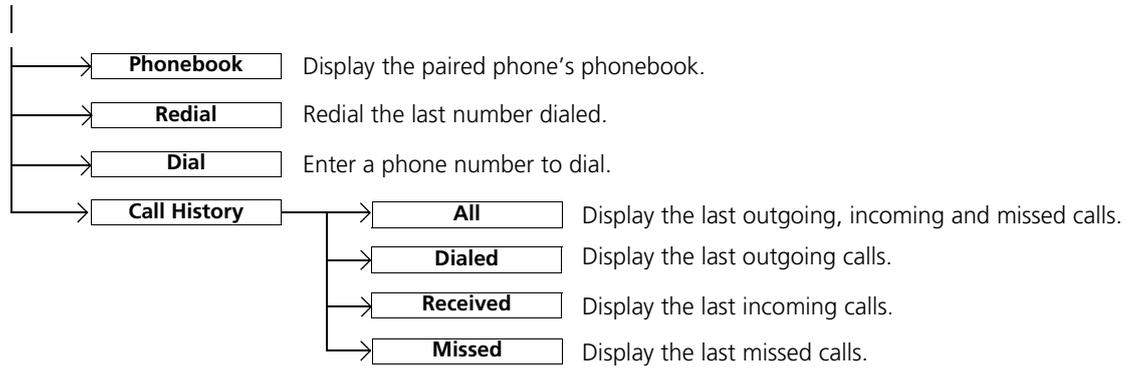


## ■ Phone Menu screen



1. Select .
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select .





## Phone Setup



### ■ To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

1. Select **Phone**.
2. Select **Yes**.
3. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
4. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, select **Phone Not Found** and search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
5. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

### ☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

#### Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone can be used with HFT.
- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is grayed out from the **Bluetooth device list** screen.



■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Bluetooth device list**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select **Connect**  , **Connect** , or **Connect** .

■ **To change the pairing code setting**

1. Select .
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Bluetooth / Wi-Fi**.
4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
5. Select **Edit pairing code**.
6. Select **Random** or **Fixed**.



▶▶ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth device list** screen.

▶▶ To change the pairing code setting

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.  
To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



#### ■ To delete a paired phone

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Bluetooth device list**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## ■ Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.

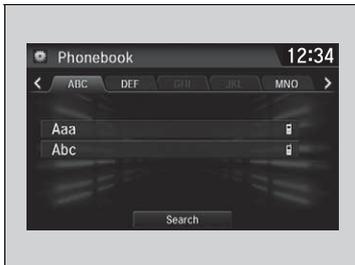


1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Ring Tone**.
3. Select **Fixed** or **Mobile phone**.

## ▶ Ring Tone

**Fixed:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.  
**Mobile phone:** For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

## Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

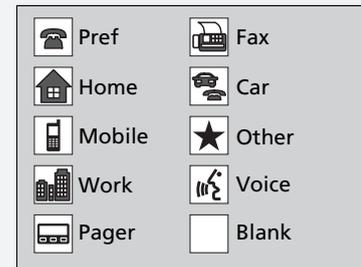


### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
 ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Automatic Phone Sync**.
3. Select **On** or **Off**.

### ⌘ Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.

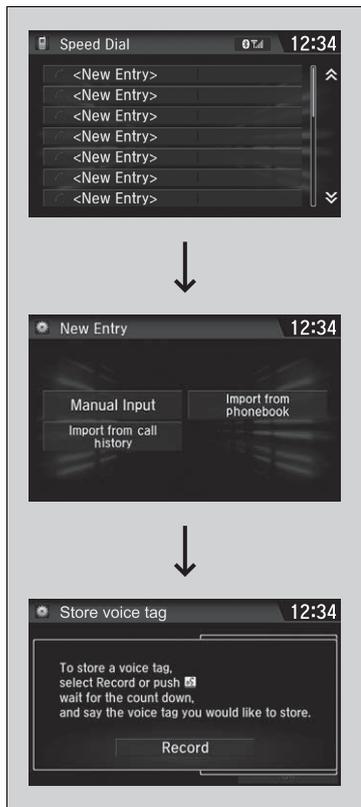


On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## ■ Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

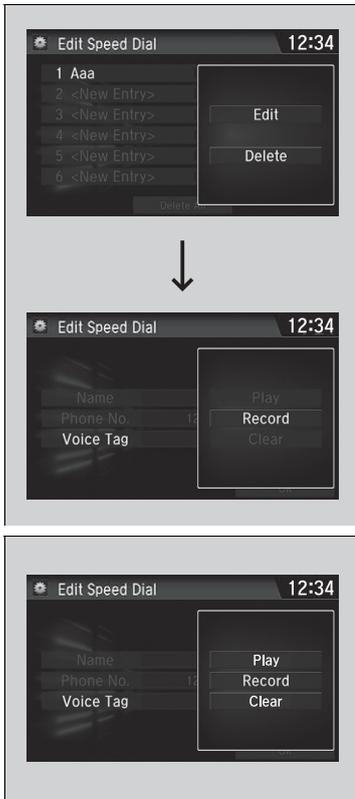


To store a speed dial number:

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select **New Entry**.
  - From **Import from call history**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the call history.
  - From **Manual Input**:
    - ▶ Input the number manually.
  - From **Import from phonebook**:
    - ▶ Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
4. When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

## ▶▶ Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



### ■ To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
5. Select **Record**, or use the  button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

### ■ To delete a voice tag

1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select **Voice Tag**.  
▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

### ▶▶ Speed Dial

Avoid using duplicate voice tags.  
Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.  
It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name.  
For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."



### ■ To edit a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
4. Select a setting you want.

### ■ To delete a speed dial

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 381
2. Select **Edit Speed Dial**.
3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
  - ▶ From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
4. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Making a Call



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.

### ▶▶ Making a Call

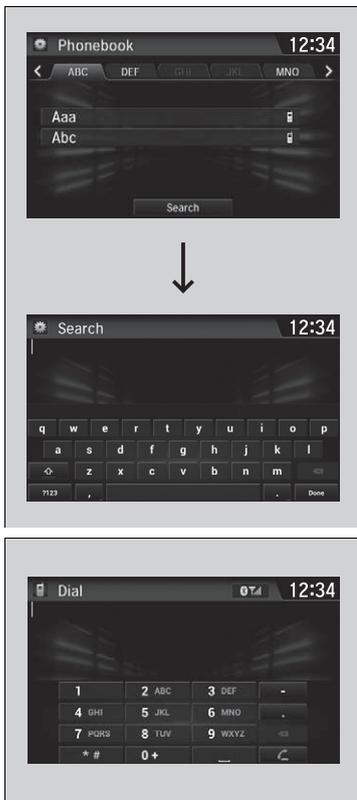
Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the  button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay.

*Continued*



■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Phonebook**.
3. Select a name.
  - ▶ You can also search by letter. Select **Search**.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
4. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

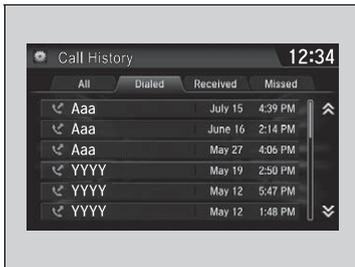
■ **To make a call using a phone number**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
  - ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Dial**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select .
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using redial**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Redial**.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using the Call History**

Call history is stored by **All, Dialed, Received, and Missed**.

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Call History**.
3. Select **All, Dialed, Received, or Missed**.
4. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using a Speed Dial entry**

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.  
 ▶ **Phone Menu screen** P. 383
2. Select **Speed Dial**.
3. Select a number.  
 ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☒ **To make a call using the Call History**

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.  
 (Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

☒ **To make a call using a Speed Dial entry**

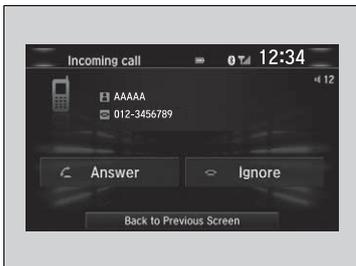
When a voice tag is stored, press the  button to call the number using the voice tag.

▶ **Speed Dial** P. 390

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen.

Press the  button and follow the prompts.

## Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

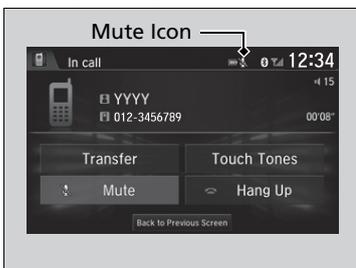
## Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Transfer:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Touch Tones:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

## Options During a Call

**Touch Tones:** Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.



# Driving

This chapter discusses driving, refueling, and information on items such as accessories.

<b>Before Driving</b>			
Driving Preparation .....	398		
Load Limit .....	401		
<b>Towing a Trailer*</b>			
Towing Preparation .....	402		
Driving Safely with a Trailer .....	405		
<b>When Driving</b>			
Starting the Engine .....	408		
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	417		
Shifting .....	418		
ECON Button .....	424		
Cruise Control* .....	425		
Adjustable Speed Limiter* .....	431		
		Front Sensor Camera* .....	435
		Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)* .....	437
		Road Departure Mitigation System* .....	449
		Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)* .....	453
		Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System .....	460
		Agile Handling Assist .....	462
		LaneWatch* .....	463
		Deflation Warning System* .....	465
		Adjusting Headlight Distribution .....	467
		<b>Braking</b>	
		Brake System .....	468
		Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) .....	473
		Brake Assist System .....	474
		Emergency Stop Signal .....	475
		Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)* .....	476
		<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b> .....	484
		<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	491
		<b>Refueling</b> .....	493
		<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> .....	497
		<b>Turbo Engine Vehicle*</b>	
		Handling Precautions .....	498

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ✎ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 544
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - **Load Limit** P. 401
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat\*.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the boot.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - **Adjusting the Seats** P. 205
    - **Adjusting the Front Head Restraints** P. 208
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - **Adjusting the Mirrors** P. 203
    - **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 202

\* Not available on all models

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

### Models with headlight adjuster

You can adjust the low beam headlight angle by yourself.

➤ **Headlight Adjuster**\* P. 194

### Models with automatic headlight adjusting system

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

Continued

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📄 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 46
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📄 **Indicators** P. 90

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

📖 **Specifications** P. 604

### ⚠ Load Limit

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

# Towing a Trailer\*

Except African, Australian, and New Zealand models

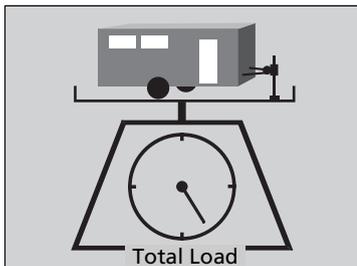
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

African, Australian, and New Zealand models

## Towing Preparation

### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

» Towing Load Limits

### **WARNING**

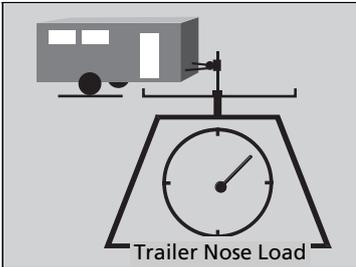
Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution. Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.



### ■ Towbar down load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 50 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 500 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load towards the front of the trailer and 40% towards the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

### ▣ Towing Load Limits

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

▣ **Specifications** P. 604

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

### ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

## ► Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment. Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### ■ Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  - ▣ **Towing Load Limits** P. 402
- Securely attach the tow bar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

### ▣ Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer is restricted up to 100 km/h.

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill or less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

## ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **D** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

## ▣ Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

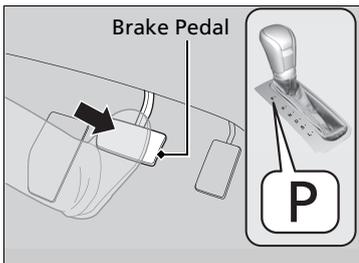
- Monitor your temperature gauge. If it nears the white (Hot) mark, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

Models without keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the electric parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

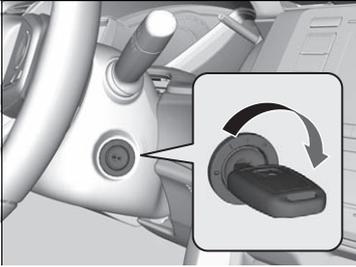
### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.



3. Turn the ignition switch to START  without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ▶▶ Starting the Engine

Do not hold the key in START  for more than 10 seconds.

- If the engine does not start right away, wait for at least 30 seconds before trying again.
- If the engine starts, but then immediately stops, wait at least 30 seconds before repeating step 3 while gently depressing the accelerator pedal. Release the accelerator pedal once the engine starts.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 175

## ■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
2. With the parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ Make sure the electric parking brake indicator goes off.
  - 🔌 **Parking Brake** P. 468

### ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to **[D]** or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### 🔌 Starting to Drive

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

### 🔌 Hill start assist system

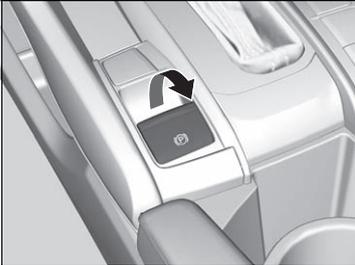
Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

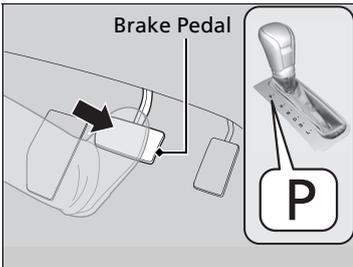
Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

Models with keyless access system

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the electric parking brake is applied.
  - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

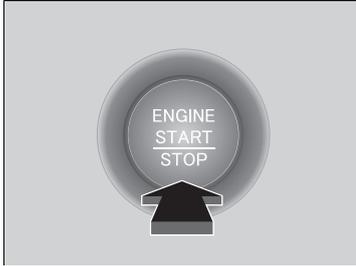
When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 573

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

#### ▶▶ Starting the Engine

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.  
If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft. If an improperly coded key (or other device) is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

▶▶ **Immobilizer System** P. 175

## ■ Stopping the Engine

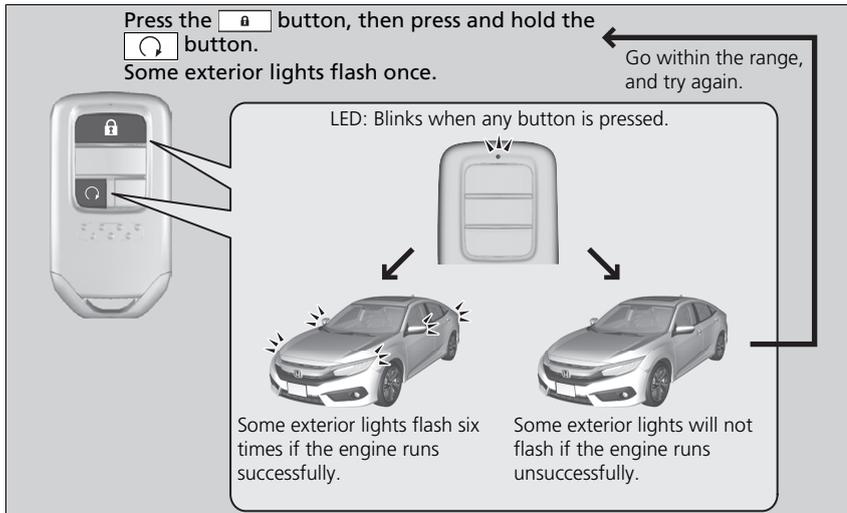
You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Shift to **P**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

## ■ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback \*

You can remotely start the engine using the  button on the keyless remote.

### ■ To start the engine



When started remotely, the engine automatically shuts off after 10 minutes of idling and the brake pedal and **ENGINE START/STOP** button have not been pressed simultaneously.

To extend the run time for another 10 minutes during the first run, press the  button, then press and hold the  button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash six times if a 10-minute extension request was transmitted successfully.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ⚠ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback \*

### ⚠ WARNING

Engine exhaust contains toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing carbon monoxide can kill you or cause unconsciousness.

Never use the remote engine starter when the vehicle is parked in a garage or other area with limited ventilation.

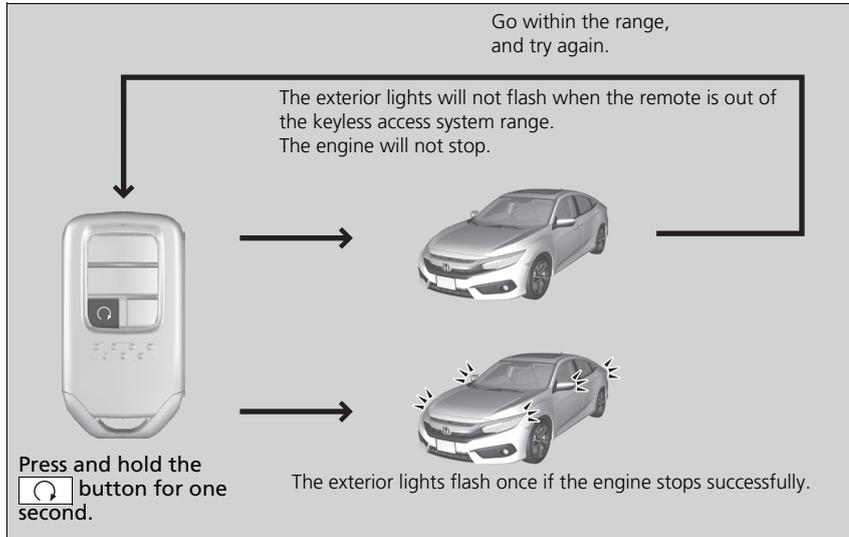
The remote engine start may violate local laws. Before using the remote engine start, check your local laws.

If there are buildings and obstacles between your vehicle and the remote, the range will be reduced. The range may be less the vehicle is running. This distance may vary by external electrical interference.

The engine may not start by the remote engine start if:

- You have disabled a remote engine start setting using the audio/information screen \*.
- The power mode is not in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- You press the shift lever release button.
- The bonnet is open, or any door or the boot is unlocked.

## ■ To stop the engine



## ▣ Remote Engine Start with Vehicle Feedback\*

- You have already used the remote twice to start the engine.
- Another registered keyless remote is in the vehicle.
- There is an antenna failure.
- Door is unlocked with the built-in key.
- The engine oil pressure is low.
- The engine coolant temperature is extremely high.
- The security system alarm is not set.

While the engine is running, the vehicle will automatically activate climate control with a preset temperature of 22°C.

When it is warm outside:

- The air conditioning is activated in recirculation mode.

When it is cold outside:

- The defroster is activated at a moderately warm temperature.
- The rear demister and door mirror heaters\* are activated.

## Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button\* on the keyless remote

1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button simultaneously.

When the engine was started in any case

2. Put the shift lever in **D**. Select **R** when reversing.
3. With the parking brake is applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
  - ▶ Make sure the parking brake indicator goes off.
4. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

### Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Move the shift lever to **D** or **S** when facing uphill, or **R** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

### Starting to Drive

When the engine was started using the  button on the keyless remote\*

The engine stops when the shift lever is moved out of **P** before the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

### Starting the Engine

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

### Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

\* Not available on all models

## Precautions While Driving

### In Rain

Avoid driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

## Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

## Continuously Variable Transmission

### Creeping

The engine runs at a higher idle speed and creeping increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower gear, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

### Precautions While Driving

If the ignition switch is turned to ACCESSORY [I]\*1 while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not put the shift lever in [N], as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

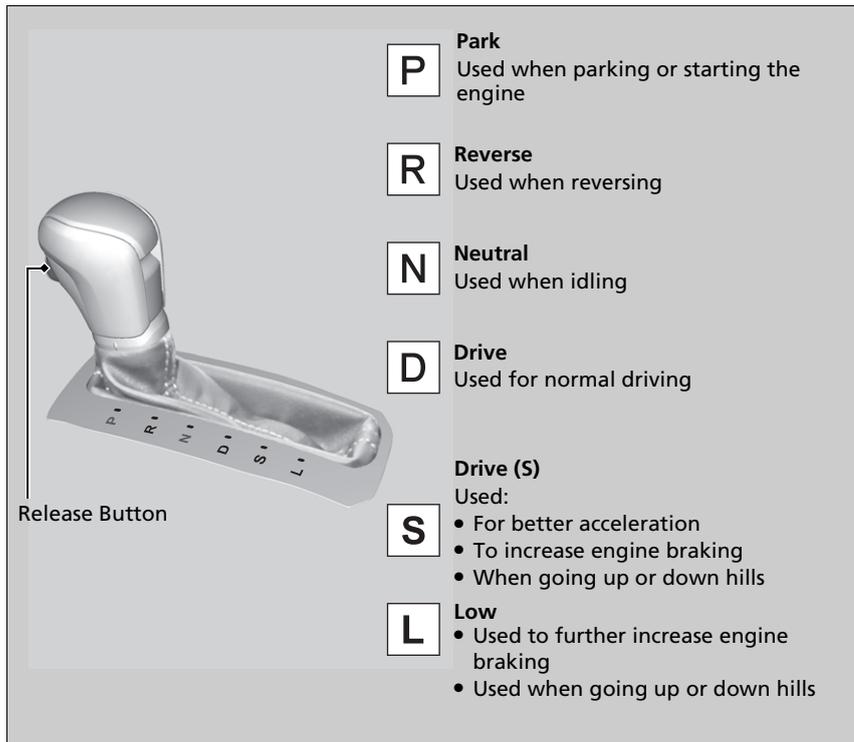
Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Continuously variable transmission models with 6 positions

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### ▶▶ Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*<sup>1</sup> and remove the key unless the shift lever is in [P].

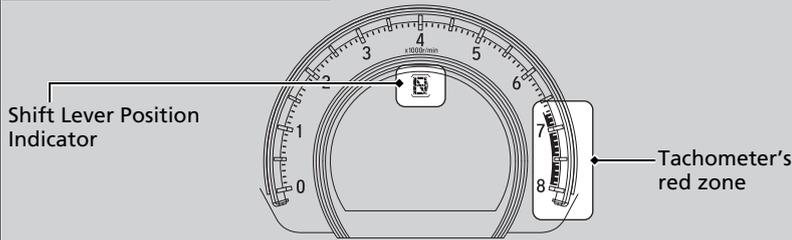
The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in [N] while the engine is cold. Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

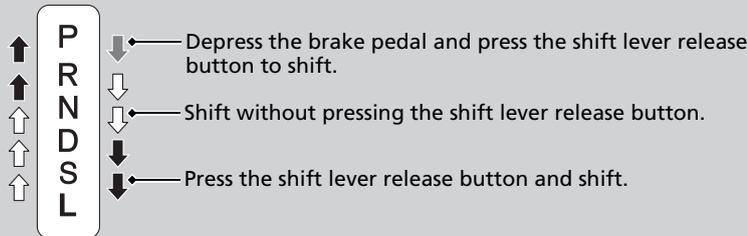
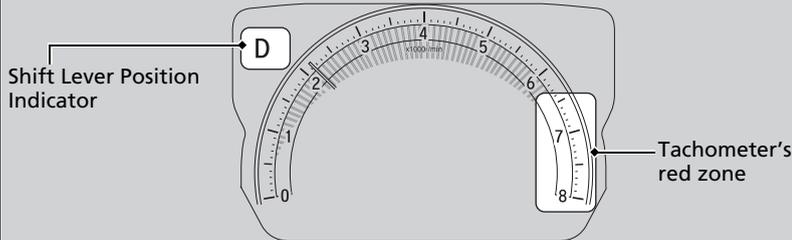
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Shift Lever Operation

### Models with information display



### Models with driver information interface



### Shift Lever Operation

#### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **[D]** to **[R]** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

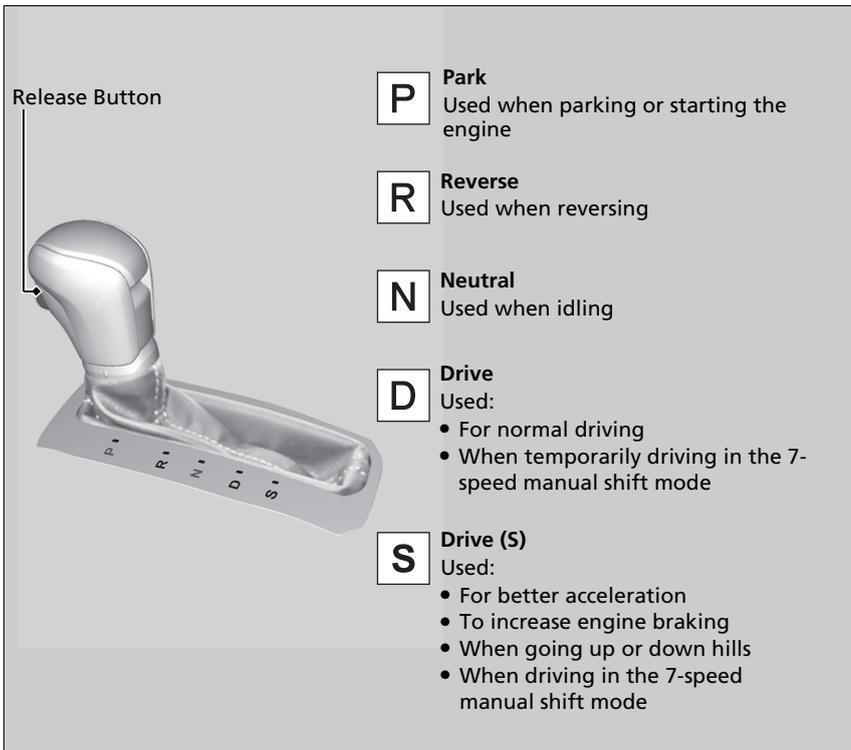
It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

Continuously variable transmission models with 5 positions

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions



### ▶▶ Shifting

You cannot turn the ignition switch to LOCK **[0]**\*1 and remove the key unless the shift lever is in **[P]**.

The vehicle may move forward very slightly even in **[N]** while the engine is cold.

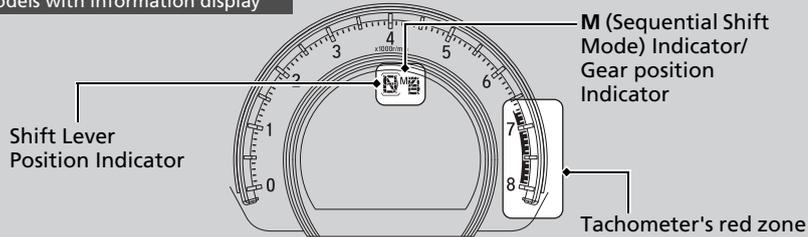
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

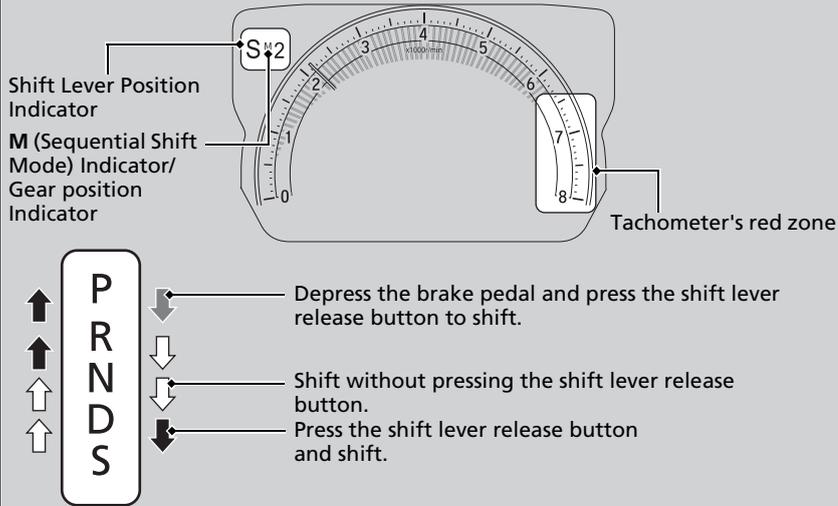
\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Shift Lever Operation

Models with information display



Models with driver information interface



### Shift Lever Operation

#### NOTICE

When you change the shift lever from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift lever position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

If the transmission indicator blinks when driving, in any shift position, there is a problem with the transmission. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without removing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **D**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **+** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

### ■ When the shift lever is in **S**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When canceling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **S** to **D**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator go off.

## ⌘ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

To improve fuel economy, the transmission may shift up to a higher speed than the seventh under certain circumstances. In this case, the number in the shift indicator remains as **7**.

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

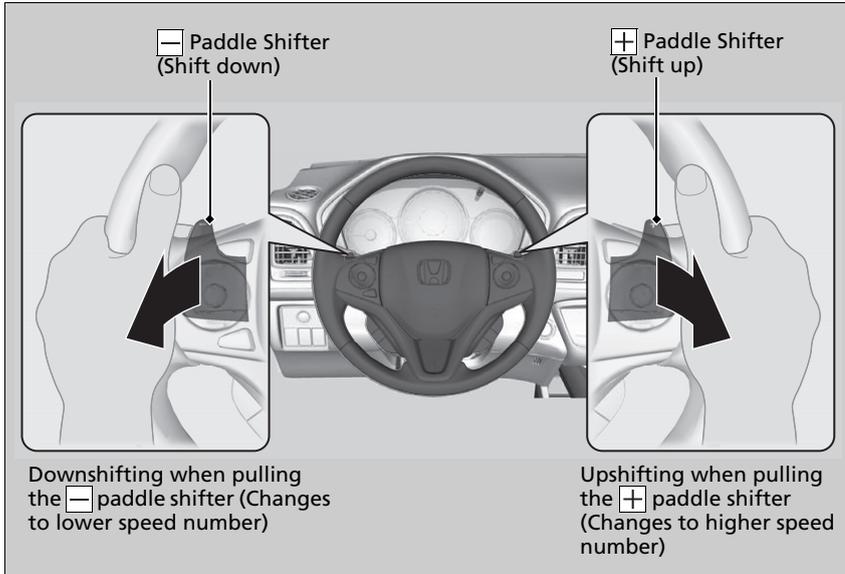
Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal D driving mode.

## 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation



### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

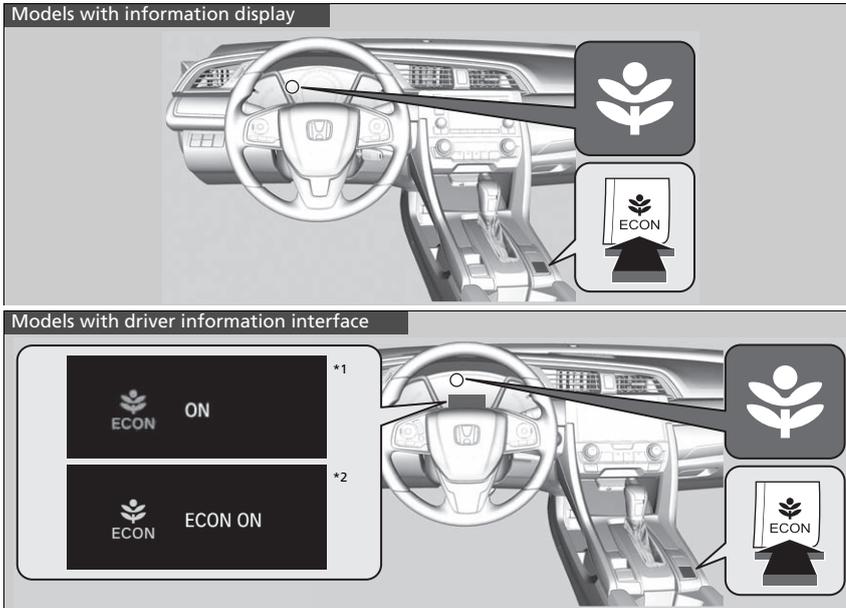
Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range.

Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

## ECON Button



### ▶▶ ECON Button

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.

The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, climate control system and cruise control\*.

\*1: African models

\*2: Except African models

\* Not available on all models

## Cruise Control\*

### Models without Adjustable Speed Limiter

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator pedal. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

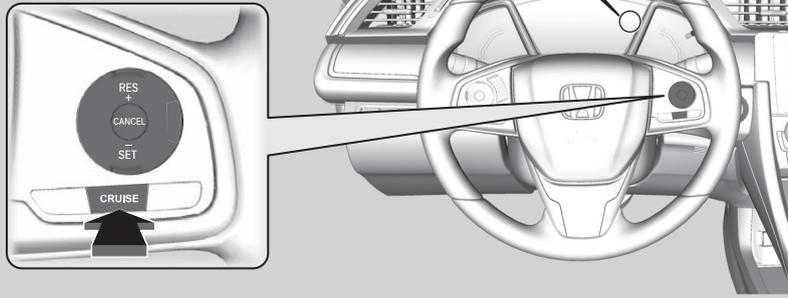
Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you



### How to use

**CRUISE MAIN is on the instrument panel**  
Cruise control is ready to use.

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



### ⌘ Cruise Control\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

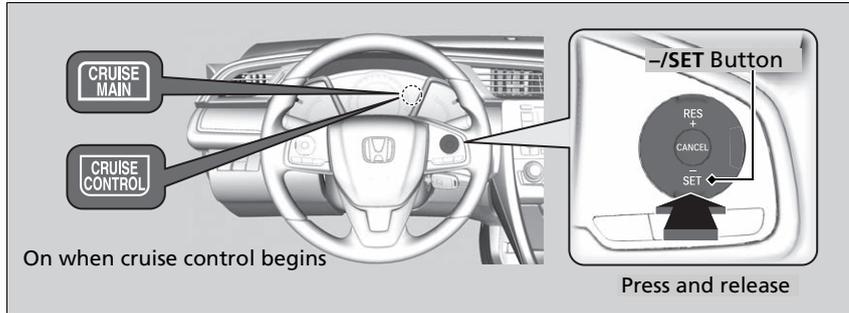
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



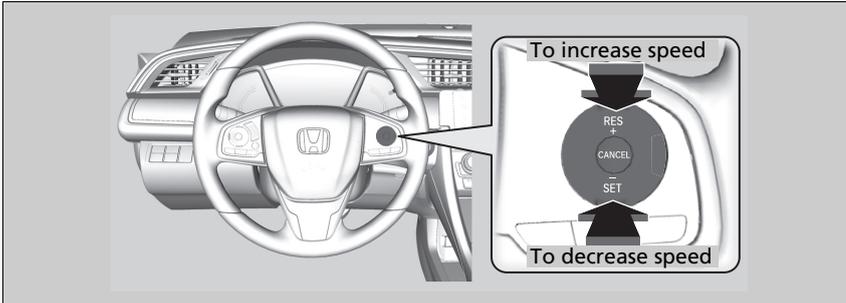
Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

During cruise control, Straight Driving Assist Function is activated. This control function is an EPS function and it helps reduce the steering effort to keep the steering angle on a straight road with cants.

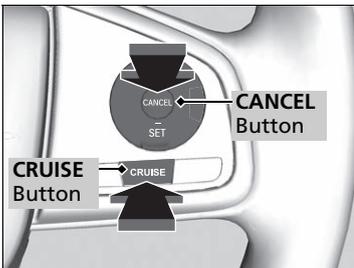
## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## ☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ☒ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:

After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Cruise Control \*

### Models with Adjustable Speed Limiter

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator pedal. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

#### When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range from about 30 km/h to about 200 km/h
- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you

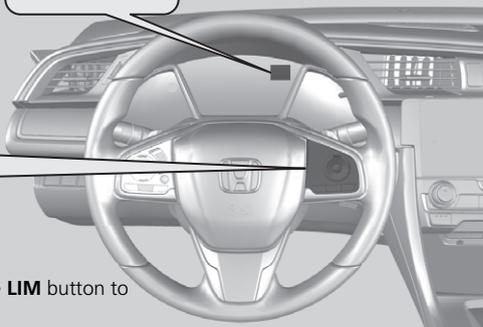


#### How to use

- Press the **MAIN** button on the steering wheel



**The indicator is on in the instrument panel**  
Cruise control is ready to use.



If a different indicator comes on, press the **LIM** button to switch to cruise control.

### ⓘ Cruise Control \*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

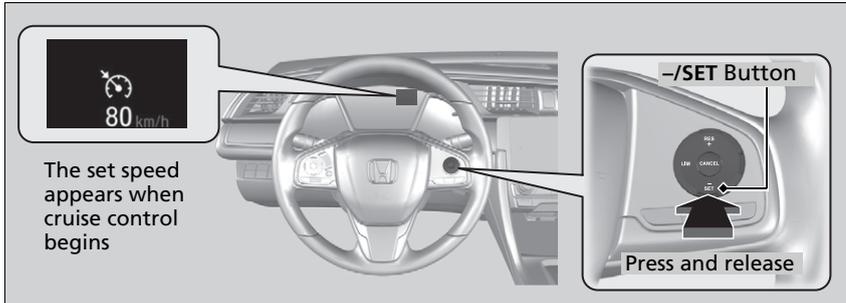
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:  
Turn off cruise control by pressing the **MAIN** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

You cannot use cruise control and the adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

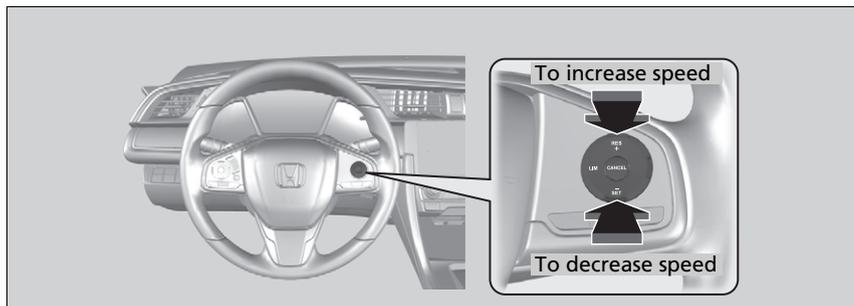


Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The set speed is displayed.

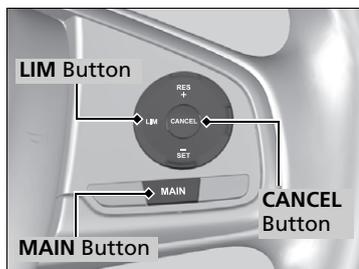
## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increased or decreased by about 10 km/h.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The displayed set speed goes off.

## ▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **-/SET** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:  
After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

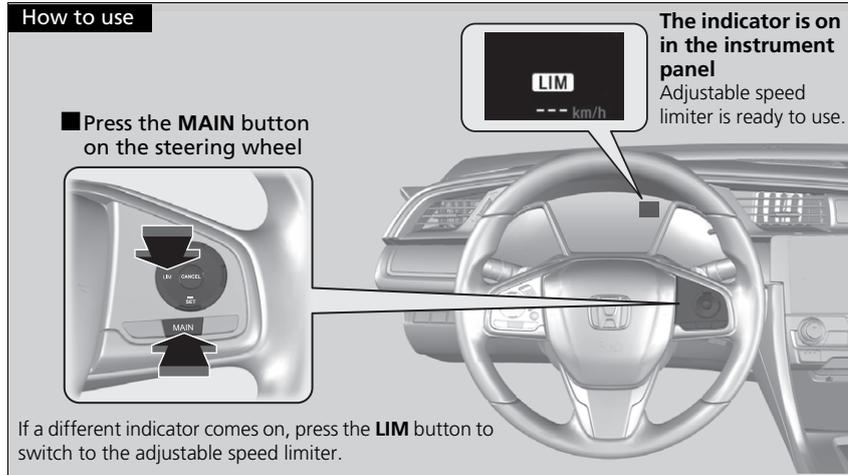
- When vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h
- When the **MAIN** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 25 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Adjustable Speed Limiter\*

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h to 250 km/h.



### Adjustable Speed Limiter\*

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations.

It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.

Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

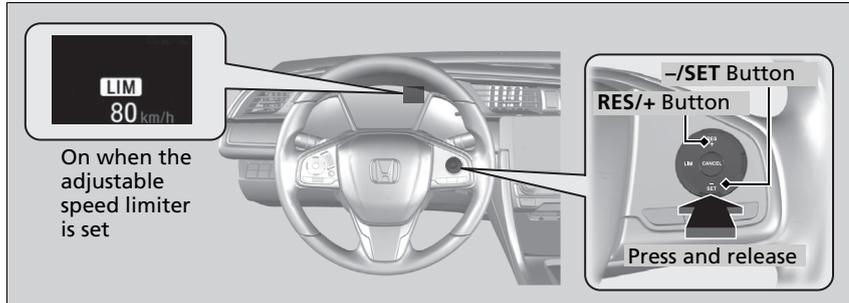
When not using the adjustable speed limiter:

Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and the cruise control\*/Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with LSF\* at the same time.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



- Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed.  
The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the set speed is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The set speed is displayed.
- You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

## ▶▶ To Set the Vehicle Speed

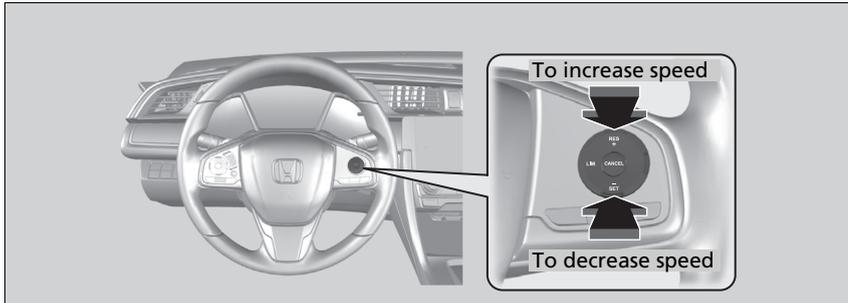
If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h, the speed limit is set to 30 km/h.

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h or more on a steep descent.

The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

## ■ To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 10 km/h.

## ■ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

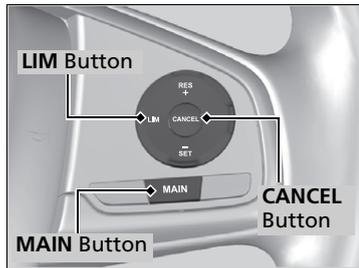
- ▶ The displayed limit speed blinks.
- The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

### ▣ Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the acceleration pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into cruise control if the **LIM** button is pressed.

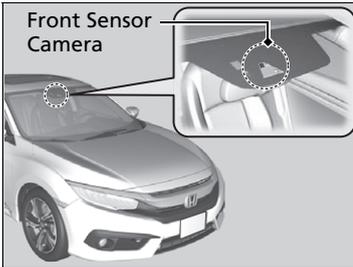


If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

## Front Sensor Camera\*

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### Front Sensor Camera\*

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera\*

If the  message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use defroster mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the  message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)\*

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with LSF slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.

### When to use

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is in the lower bumper next to the fog light. Be careful not to hit the radar sensor cover. Strong impact can damage it.

- Vehicle speed for ACC with LSF: **A vehicle is detected ahead within ACC with LSF range** – ACC with LSF operates at speeds up to 180 km/h.  
**No vehicle is detected within ACC with LSF range** – ACC with LSF operates at the speed of 30 km/h or above.
- Shift position for ACC with LSF: In **D** or **S**.

### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)\*

#### **WARNING**

Improper use of ACC with LSF can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with LSF only when driving on motorway and in good weather conditions.

#### **WARNING**

ACC with LSF has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

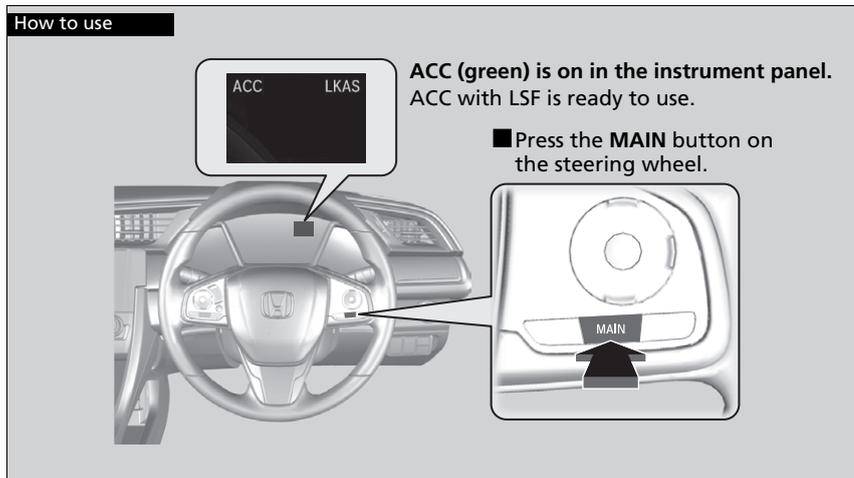
Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

#### **Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with LSF. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe distance between your vehicle and other vehicles.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ How to activate the system



## ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)\*

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with LSF and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

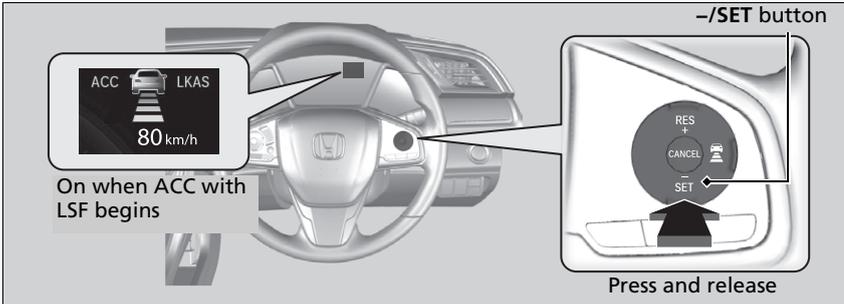
▶ **ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**  
P. 442

When not using ACC with LSF: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with LSF under the following conditions:

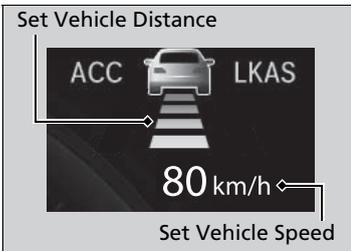
- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with LSF will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



**When driving at 30 km/h or above:** Take your foot off the pedal and press the **-/SET** button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with LSF begins.

**When driving slower than 30 km/h:** If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to 30 km/h regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary and a vehicle is detected ahead, your vehicle speed can be set, even with the brake pedal depressed.



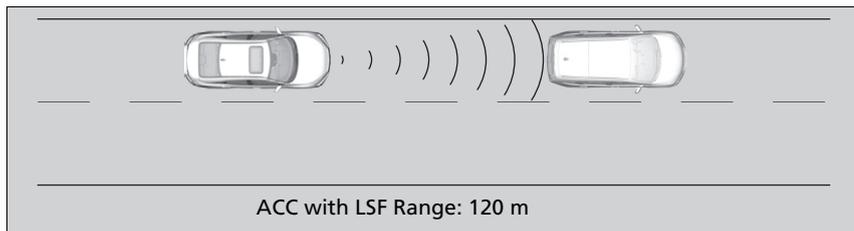
When ACC with LSF starts operating, the vehicle icon, distance bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with LSF monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with LSF range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with LSF system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following interval from the vehicle ahead.

➤ **To Set or Change Following Interval** P. 445

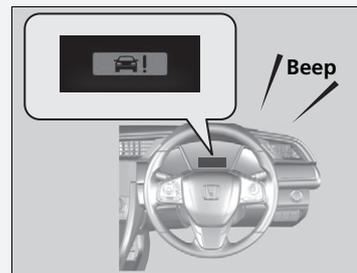


When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## ⌘ When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface.

Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate distance from the vehicle ahead.



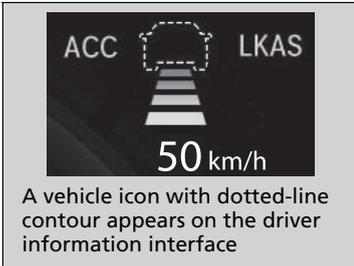
Even if the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is short, ACC with LSF may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the distance between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC with LSF detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

■ **There is no vehicle ahead**

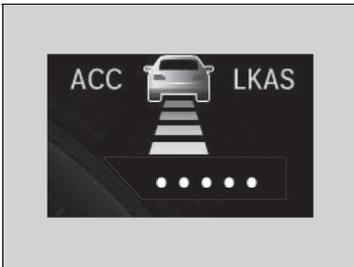


Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal. If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from traveling at the set speed, ACC with LSF accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

■ **When you depress the accelerator pedal**

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with LSF range. ACC with LSF stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with LSF range.

■ **A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop**



Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The  message appears on the driver information interface. When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with LSF operates again within the prior set speed.

⌘ When in Operation

**Limitations**

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe distance when using ACC with LSF. Additionally, ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

⌘ **ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**  
P. 442

⌘ A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop

**⚠ WARNING**

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with LSF system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with LSF.

## ■ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 435

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong size, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the lower bumper next to the fog light is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

## ➤ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC with LSF is shared with the collision mitigation braking system (CMBS).

➤ **Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*** P. 476

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 435

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.
- When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

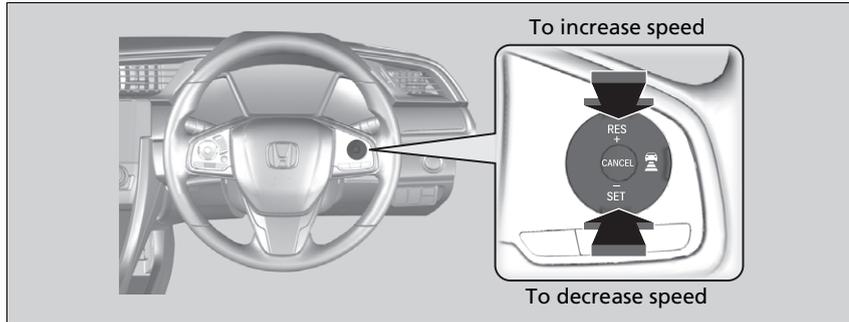
**⊠ ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations**

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button on the steering wheel.

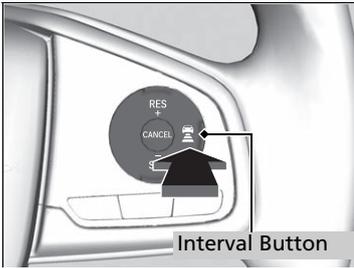


- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep pressing the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

## ▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with LSF may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

## ■ To Set or Change Following Interval



Press the  (interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

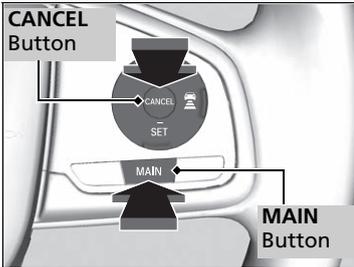
Following Interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		25 meters 1.1 sec	31 meters 1.1 sec
Middle		33 meters 1.5 sec	42 meters 1.5 sec
Long		47 meters 2.1 sec	61 meters 2.1 sec
Extra Long		62 meters 2.8 sec	81 meters 2.8 sec

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the distance between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with LSF distance setting.

🔗 To Set or Change Following Interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking distance from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum distances or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC with LSF, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ ACC with LSF indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ When the LSF function has stopped the vehicle, you cannot cancel ACC with LSF by depressing the brake pedal.

## ☒ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with LSF, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with LSF has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

### ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with LSF is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with LSF to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the lower bumper next to the fog light gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with LSF range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with LSF automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The engine is turned off.

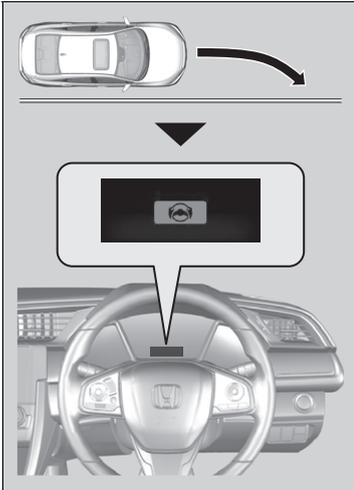
### ▶ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves, then press the **-/SET** button.

## Road Departure Mitigation System\*

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings.

### How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

As a visual alert, the  message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

### ⚠ Road Departure Mitigation System\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 435

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations** P. 451

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions. If the  message displays repeatedly and you do not apply responsive actions, the system beeps and cancels Road Departure Mitigation functions.

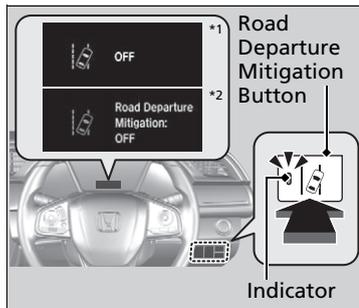
\* Not available on all models

## ■ How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is traveling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

## ⌘ How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

➤ **Indicators** P. 90

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## ⌘ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

\*1: African models

\*2: Except African models

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre\*, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

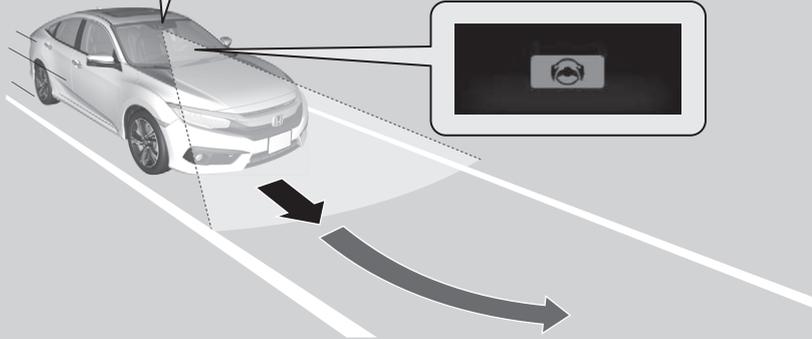
### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ LKAS camera  
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts  
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

➡ If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

### ☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

#### ☒ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages\* P. 117

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the front windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorway.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

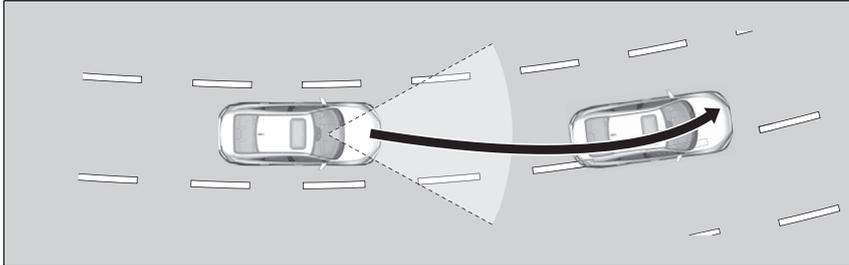
#### ☒ The LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 458

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

#### ☒ Front Sensor Camera\* P. 435

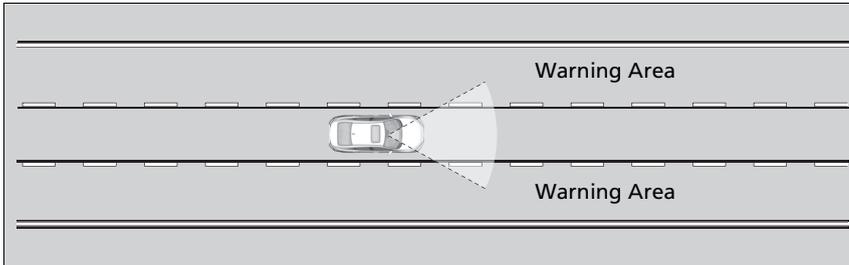
### ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



### ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



### ⓘ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)\*

The LKAS may not function as designed on while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

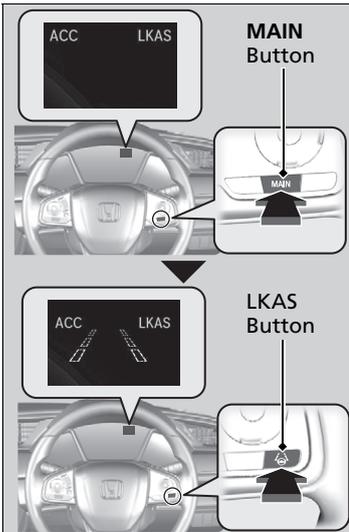
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When lane is detected, system will recover automatically.

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.

## ■ How to activate the system



1. Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.  
The system is ready to use.
2. Press the LKAS button.
  - ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.  
The system is activated.

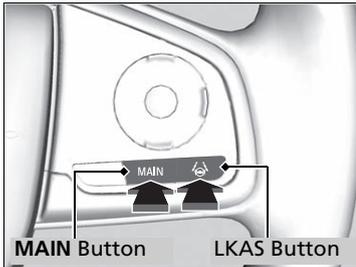
## ▶▶ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either the left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## ■ Cancel

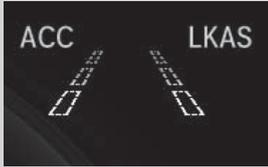


To cancel the LKAS:  
Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ☒ Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with LSF on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

### ■ The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to continuous operation.
  - ▶ Turning the wipers off resumes the LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h or less.
  - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

### Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to **AUTO** the wipers operate continuously.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate intermittently.

### ■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- The vehicle runs on a curved road over the speed limit.
- When driving through a sharp curve.
- When driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sound if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

■ **The LKAS Conditions and Limitations**

The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

■ **Environmental conditions**

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the front windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

**■ Roadway conditions**

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- When driving on roads with double lines.

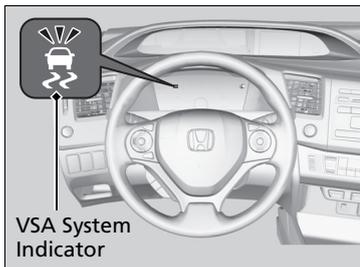
**■ Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

Helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### ■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### ▣ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures are as specified.

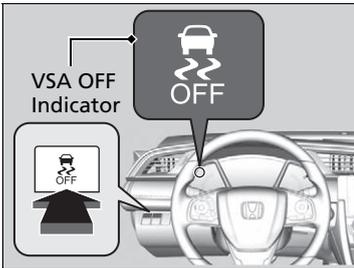
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The VSA system indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

## VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/ features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA OFF) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the  button pressed if you are not able to free it without.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to press the  button again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the button pressed (indicator on).

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

The VSA OFF indicator may come on after reconnecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Agile Handling Assist

---

Lightly brakes selective wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

### ⚠ Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

## LaneWatch\*

LaneWatch is an assistance system that allows you to check the passenger side rear areas displayed on the audio/information screen when the turn signal is activated to the passenger's side. A camera in the passenger side door mirror monitors these areas and allows you to check for vehicles, in addition to your visual check and use of the passenger door mirror. You can also keep the system on for your convenience while driving.

**2** The passenger side view display appears on the audio/information screen.



**1** The system activates when you:

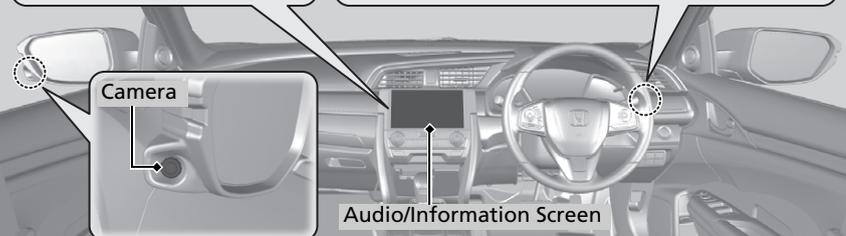
Move the turn signal lever to the passenger side.



Press the LaneWatch button.



The system deactivates when you press the LaneWatch button again.



Camera

Audio/Information Screen

### ▶▶ LaneWatch\*

## ⚠ WARNING

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on LaneWatch while driving.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, LaneWatch has limitations. Over reliance on LaneWatch may result in a collision.

The LaneWatch function can be affected by weather, lighting (including headlights and low sun angle), ambient darkness, camera condition, and loading.

The LaneWatch may not provide the intended display of traffic to the side and rear under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle's suspension has been altered, changing the height of the vehicle.
- Your tyres are over or under inflated.
- Your tyres or wheels are of varied size or construction.

\* Not available on all models

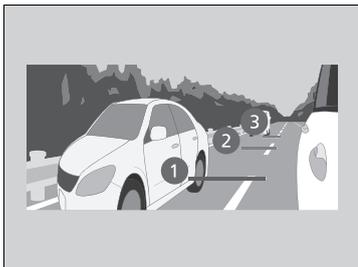
### ■ Customizing the LaneWatch settings\*

You can customize the following items using the audio/information screen.

- **Show with Turn Signal:** Selects whether LaneWatch monitor comes on when you operate the turn signal light lever.
- **Display Time after Turn Signal Off:** Changes the length of time the LaneWatch display stays on after you pull the turn signal lever back.
- **Reference Line:** Selects whether the reference lines appear on the LaneWatch monitor.
- **Display:** Allows for display adjustments of items, such as brightness, contrast and black level. This setting is part of the **System** setup group.

📄 **Customized Features** P. 324

### ■ Reference Lines



Three lines that appear on the screen can give an idea of how far the vehicles or objects on the screen are from your vehicle, respectively. If an object is near line 1 (in red), it indicates that it is close to your vehicle whereas an object near line 3 farther away.

### 📄 LaneWatch\*

The LaneWatch camera view is restricted. Its unique lens makes objects on the screen look slightly different from what they are.

LaneWatch display does not come on when the shift lever is in **R**.

For proper LaneWatch operation:

- The camera is located in the passenger side door mirror. Always keep this area clean. If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.
- Do not cover the camera lens with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Do not touch the camera lens.

### 📄 Reference Lines

The area around the reference line 1 (red) is very close to your vehicle. As always, make sure to visually confirm the safety of a lane change before changing lanes.

The distance between your vehicle and lines 1, 2 and 3 on the screen vary depending on road conditions and vehicle loading. For example, the reference lines on the screen may seem to appear closer than the actual distances when the rear of your vehicle is more heavily loaded.

Consult a dealer if:

- The passenger side door mirror, or area around it is severely impacted, resulting in changing the camera angle.
- The LaneWatch display does not come on at all.

## Deflation Warning System\*

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h. When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.

### Deflation Warning System Calibration

You must start deflation warning system calibration every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before calibrating the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.
  - ▶ **Checking Tyres** P. 544

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The ignition switch is in ON **II**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Deflation Warning System\*

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

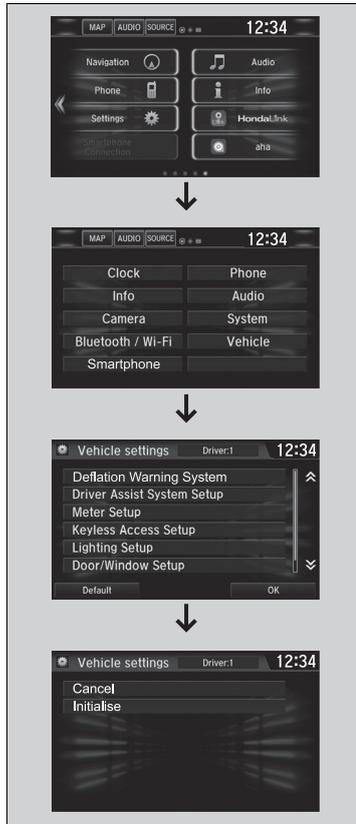
▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 544

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Snow chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre\* is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at calibration.
- Snow chains are used.



You can calibrate the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Turn the ignition switch to ON II\*1.
2. Select ☰.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Cancel** or **Initialise**.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 4-5.
- The calibration process finishes automatically.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

#### ▶▶ Deflation Warning System Calibration

- Deflation Warning System cannot be calibrated if a compact spare tyre\* is installed.
- The calibration process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 48–105 km/h.
- During this period, if the ignition is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the calibration process is not yet complete.

If the snow chains are installed, remove them before calibrating the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

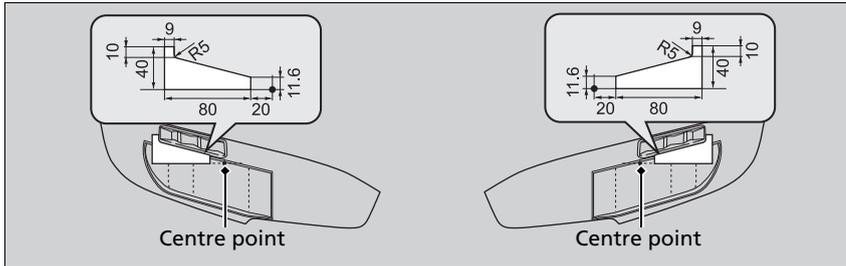
We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Australian and South African models with LED headlights

## Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



1. Prepare for two rectangular pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm wide and 80 mm long.
  - ▶ Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
2. Affix the tape to the lens as shown.

### Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details.

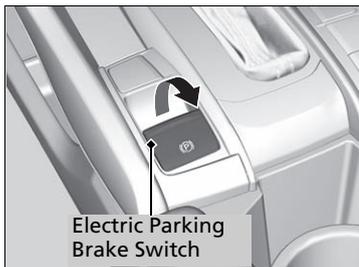
## Brake System

### ■ Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. You can manually apply and release, or automatically release it.

#### ■ Manual operations

Use the electric parking brake switch to apply or release the parking brake. Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.



#### ■ To apply manually

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has battery, no matter which position the ignition switch\*1 is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.



#### ■ To release manually

The vehicle must be ON \*1 in order to release the electric parking brake.

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Press the electric parking brake switch.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### ⊠ Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the battery goes dead.

#### ⊠ Jump Starting P. 575

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the VSA system until the vehicle come to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and the brake hold system is applied.
- When the engine is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with the brake hold system while brake hold is applied.

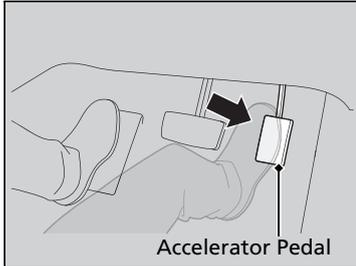
#### Models with ACC with LSF

- When the vehicle is stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the engine is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

■ **To release automatically**

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal.

- ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

The parking brake automatically releases as you depress the accelerator pedal when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The engine is running.
- The transmission is not in **P** or **N**.

⌘ Parking Brake

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- **ABS** indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

## ■ Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps to reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 474

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 473

## ☒ Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

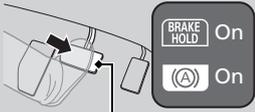
If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a lower gear.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.

<p>■ Turning on the system</p>  <p>Automatic Brake Hold Button</p> <p>Fasten your seat belt properly, then start the engine. Press the automatic brake hold button.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.</li> </ul>	<p>■ Activating the system</p>  <p>Brake Pedal</p> <p>Depress the brake pedal to come to a complete stop. The shift lever must not be in <b>P</b> or <b>R</b>.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.</li> <li>• Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.</li> </ul>	<p>■ Canceling the system</p>  <p>Accelerator Pedal</p> <p>Depress the accelerator pedal while the shift lever is in a position other than <b>P</b> or <b>N</b>. The brake hold is disengaged and the vehicle starts to move.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system releases the brake automatically.</li> </ul>
---	--	--

### Automatic Brake Hold

#### ⚠ WARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

#### ⚠ WARNING

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in **P** and applying the parking brake.

Continued

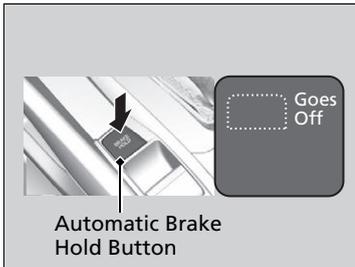
### ■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and move the shift lever to **P** or **R**.

Under the following conditions, the system automatically cancels, and the parking brake is applied:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The engine is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.
- The battery is disconnected.

### ■ Turning off the automatic brake hold system



While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

- The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

### ⌘ Automatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the engine or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

#### ⌘ When Stopped P. 484

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the engine is off.

### ⌘ Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as “stomp and steer.”

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

### ▶▶ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more stopping distance than a vehicle without the ABS:

- When driving on rough road surfaces, including when driving on uneven surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- When tyre chains are installed.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

## Brake Assist System

---

Designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

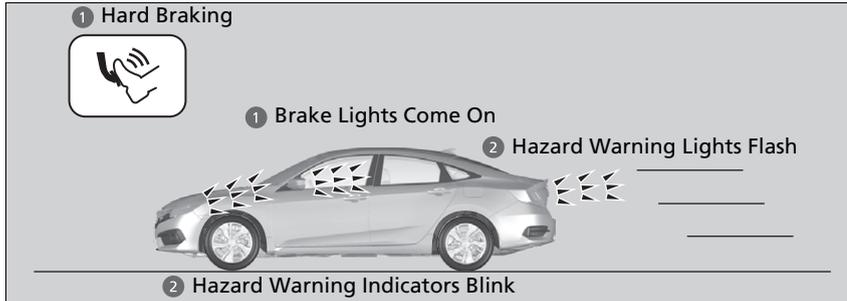
Depress the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ⚠ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

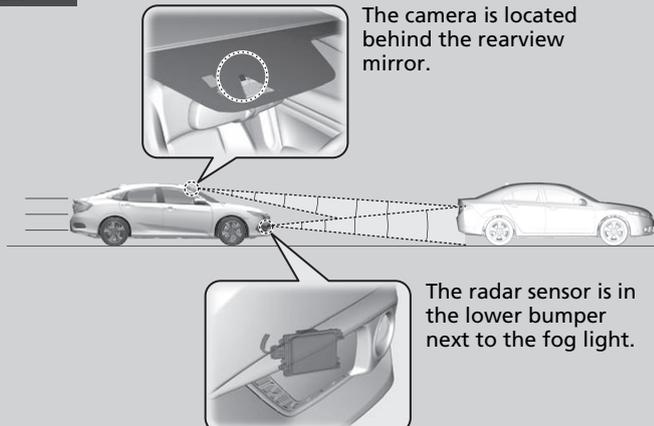
If the ABS stops working for a certain period of the during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

### ■ How the system works

**When to use**



The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

The radar sensor is in the lower bumper next to the fog light.

The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

### ⊗ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

#### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 435

Be careful not to hit the radar sensor.

### ⊗ How the system works

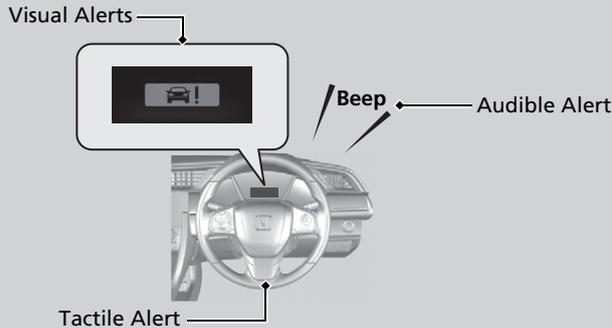
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when your vehicle speed is between 30 and 100 km/h with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through audio/information screen setting options.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 324

## ■ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

## ▶▶ When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians. However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions. Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

- ▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

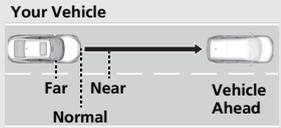
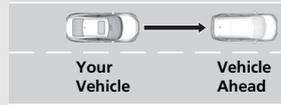
## ▶▶ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

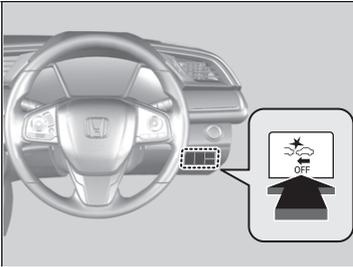
- ▶ **Indicators** P. 90

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles	CMBS			
	The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Steering Wheel	Braking
Stage one 	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in <b>Far</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	In case of an oncoming vehicle detected, rapid vibration is provided.	—
Stage two 	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	—	Lightly applied
Stage three 	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.			Forcefully applied

## ■ CMBS On and Off



Press this button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The beeper sounds.
- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is in the previously selected ON or OFF setting each time you start the engine.

## ☒ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

☒ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 480

The CMBS indicator may come on after re-connecting the battery.

Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h. The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera\*** P. 435

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes in ambient light, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast on a snowy or wet roadway).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

## ⌘ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the CMBS off button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

**■ Vehicle conditions**

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong size, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

*Continued*

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 meter or taller than about 2 meters in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

**■ Automatic shutoff**

CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.

### ■ On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

### ■ Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

### ■ Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.

## ⓘ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*

For the CMBS to work properly:

Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.

Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.

Do not paint, or apply any coverings or paint to the radar sensor area. This can impact CMBS operation.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

If the front of the vehicle is impacted in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- The vehicle mounted onto a bump, curb, chock, embankment, etc.
- You drive the vehicle where the water is deep.
- Your vehicle has a frontal collision.

\* Not available on all models

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. With the brake pedal depressed, slowly pull the electric parking brake switch all the way up.
3. Move the shift lever from **[D]** to **[P]**.
4. Turn off the engine.
  - ▶ The parking brake indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm that the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### ⌘ Parking Your Vehicle

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

### ⌘ When Stopped

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the transmission:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **[P]** before the vehicle stops completely.

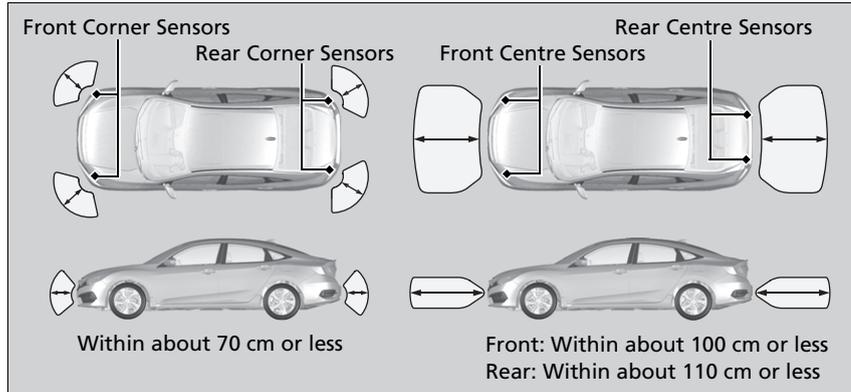
In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System\*

### Models with 8 sensors

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle. The beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ⊠ Parking Sensor System\*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt, etc.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumpy road, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

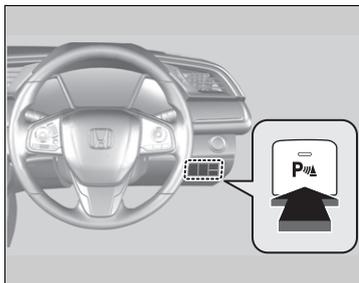
The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in **[R]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is not in **[P]**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: Within about 100-60 cm Rear: Within about 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	 <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle</p>
Short	About 70-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

## ☒ Turning off All Rear Sensors

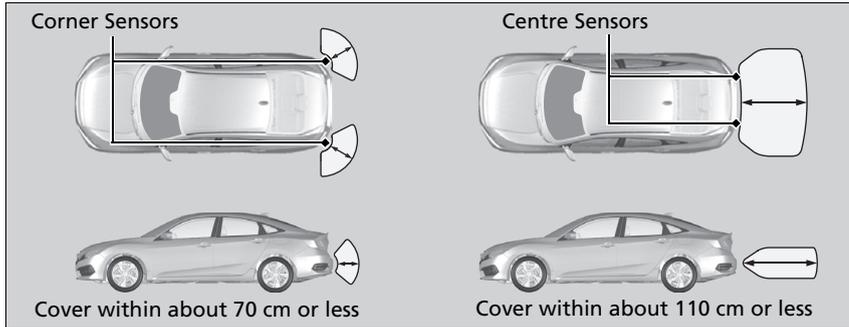
When you set the gear position to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## Parking Sensor System\*

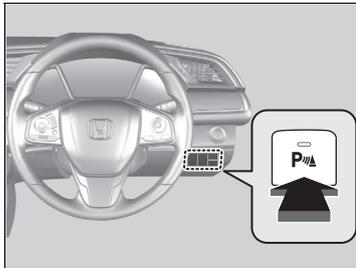
### Models with 4 sensors

The rear corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles behind your vehicle, and the beeper and information display\*/driver information interface\* let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the ignition switch in ON **II**\*1, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The system activates when the shift lever is in **R**.

### ⊠ Parking Sensor System\*

Even the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

### ⊠ Parking sensor system on and off

When you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles behind becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the bumper and obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen*/ Driver information interface*
	Corner sensors	Centre sensors		
Moderate	—	About 110-60 cm	Blinks in yellow* <sup>1</sup>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Models without rearview camera</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 2px; margin-bottom: 5px;">Models with rearview camera</div>  <p>Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.</p>
Short	About 70-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in red	

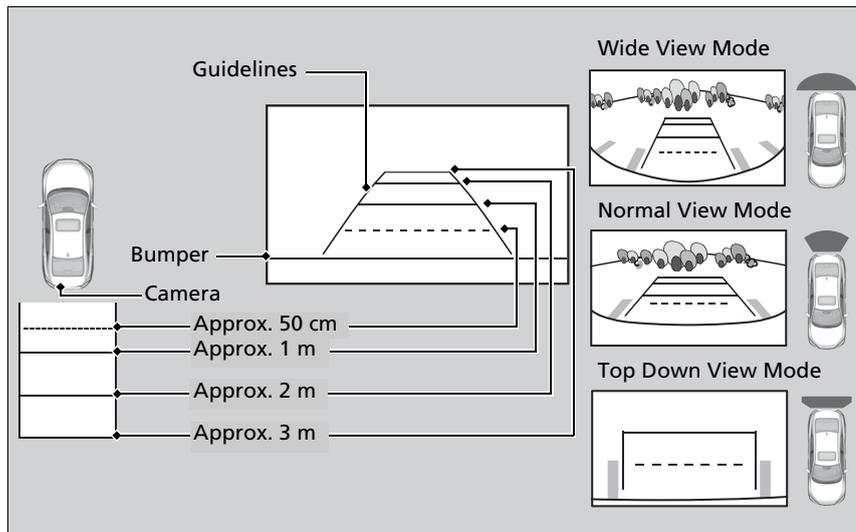
\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view.

The display automatically changes to a rear view when the shift lever is moved to **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before reversing. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

#### Fixed Guideline

**On:** Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

**Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

#### Dynamic Guidelines

**On:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**Off:** Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera angles on the rearview display.

**Models with colour audio system**

Press the selector knob to switch the angle.

**Models with Display Audio**

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the angle.



: Wide view



: Normal view



: Top down view

**All models**

- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same mode is selected the next time you shift into **R**.
- If Top down view was last used before you turned off the engine, Wide View mode is selected next time you turn the ignition switch to ON **II**<sup>\*1</sup> and shift to **R**.
- If Top down view was last used more than 10 seconds after you shift from **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you shift to **R**.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Fuel Information

### Fuel recommendation

#### Thai models with 1.8 L engine

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### Thai models with 1.5 L engine

**Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol/gasohol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

#### Indonesian models with 1.8 L engine

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of a lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of a petrol with a research octane less than 88 can lead to engine damage.

### Refueling

#### Thai models

Immediately after refueling, especially when you have switched to another type of fuel, the engine and fuel system may go into a compensating period for fuel performance.

It will be required to drive moderately at a constant speed for about 10 minutes, without rapid acceleration when traffic allows. In this period, you may notice engine knocking.

### Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

Pakistani models with 1.8 L engine

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 87 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

Pakistani models with 1.5 L engine

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular Unleaded petrol with a research octane of 87 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Other models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

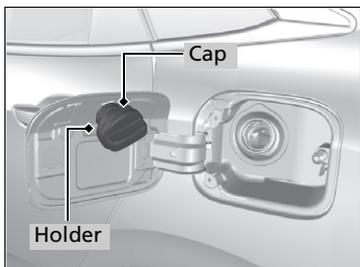
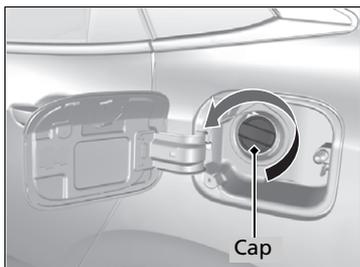
■ **Fuel tank capacity: 47 litres**

1.5 L engine models

■ **Engine cleaner**

Regular use of Injector Cleaning Additives may be required depend on quality of local fuel.

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Unlock the driver's door using the master door lock switch or lock tab.
  - ▶ The fuel fill door on the outer side of the vehicle will unlock.
4. Press on the edge of the fuel fill door to make it pop up slightly.
5. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
6. Place the fuel filler cap in the holder.
7. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
  - ▶ When the tank is full, the fuel nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
8. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
  - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### ▶▶ How to Refuel

## **⚠ WARNING**

**Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

Use the lock tab or the master door lock switch to unlock the fuel fill door.

The vehicle doors and fuel fill door automatically relock if the remote unlock function is used. This can be deactivated by briefly opening then closing the driver's door.

The fuel fill door and its latching mechanism can be permanently damaged if the fuel fill door is forced closed when the driver's door is locked.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

#### Maintenance Schedule\* P. 511

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended by the ACEA or API Certification Seal.
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

\* Not available on all models

### Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

## Handling Precautions

The turbocharger is a high-precision device to obtain greater horsepower by delivering a large volume of compressed air into the engine using a turbine driven by the engine's exhaust gas pressure.

- When the engine is cold just after starting, avoid revving the engine or sudden acceleration.
- Always replace the engine oil and engine oil filter according to the Oil Monitor system. The turbine rotates at very high speeds over 100,000 rpm and its temperature reaches over 700°C. It is lubricated and cooled by engine oil. If you fail to replace the engine oil and filter at the scheduled distance or interval, deteriorated engine oil may cause failure such as sticking and abnormal noise of the turbine bearing.

### ☞ Turbo Engine Vehicle\*

The scheduled maintenance intervals for replacing the filter is indicated on the information display\*/ driver information interface\*. Follow the information of when to replace them.

#### ☞ **Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information** P. 503, 507

The temperature gauge pointer is at the **[H]** mark\*<sup>1</sup> or upper level\*<sup>2</sup> when you restart the engine after driving under high load conditions such as at high speed or in hilly terrain. This is normal. The gauge goes down after you idle or drive the vehicle for about one minute.

\*1: Except African models

\*2: African models

\* Not available on all models

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance .....	500
Safety When Performing Maintenance ....	501
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance	
Service .....	502

## Oil Monitor System\* .....

511
-----

## Maintenance Under the Bonnet

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet ..	516
Opening the Bonnet .....	518
Recommended Engine Oil .....	520
Oil Check.....	521
Adding Engine Oil.....	523

Engine Coolant.....	524
Transmission Fluid.....	526
Brake Fluid.....	526
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	527
Fuel Filter.....	527

## Replacing Light Bulbs .....

528	
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper</b>	
Blades .....	541

## Checking and Maintaining Tyres

Checking Tyres .....	544
Wear Indicators.....	545
Tyre Service Life .....	545
Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....	546

Tyre Rotation.....	547
Snow Traction Devices .....	549

## Battery

Checking the Battery .....	551
Charging the Battery .....	552

## Remote Transmitter Care

Replacing the Button Battery .....	553
------------------------------------	-----

## Climate Control System Maintenance

Dust and Pollen Filter .....	555
------------------------------	-----

## Cleaning

Interior Care .....	557
Exterior Care.....	559

## Accessories and Modifications .....

\* Not available on all models

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule**\* P. 511

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 526
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 544
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 528
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 541

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether or not you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - ▶ Operate the engine only when there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

\* Not available on all models

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book\*.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

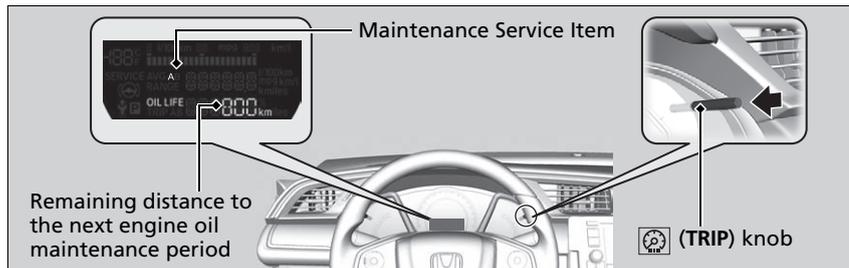
---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

The oil monitor system indicator notify you when to change the engine oil, or when to bring your vehicle to a dealer for indicated maintenance services.

Models with information display

## Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press the (TRIP) knob repeatedly until the engine oil life appears on the information display.

The oil monitor system indicator stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

### Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:

- A. Replace engine oil
- B. Replace engine oil and oil filter

Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

## Oil Monitor System Information on the Information Display

To switch the display, press the  (TRIP) knob.

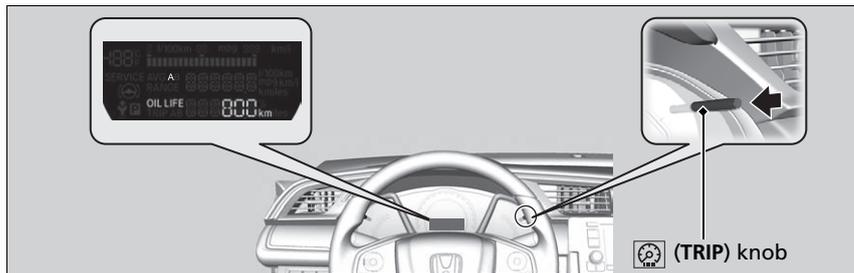
Oil Monitor System Indicator	Information Display	Information
		<p>When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change.</p>
		<p>When you select the oil monitor system information screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the remaining distance.</p>
 <p>Starts to come on when the ignition switch is turned ON *1. It goes off when the  knob is pressed.</p>	 	<p>The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.</p> <p>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance service item should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Oil Monitor System Indicator	Information Display	Information
 <p>Stays on as a reminder until the oil monitor system is reset.</p>	 <p>Distance blinks</p>	<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance service item must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

## ■ Resetting the Display

Reset the engine oil monitor system information if you have performed the maintenance service.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1 and have the vehicle at a complete stop.
2. Display the engine oil life by repeatedly pressing the (TRIP) knob.
3. Press and hold the knob for 10 seconds or more.
  - ▶ The display will blink to show it is in reset mode.
4. Press and hold the knob until the display changes.
  - ▶ When the oil monitor system information display is reset, the engine oil life is reset to ---- km.

## ⌘ Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

You can cancel the resetting display in one of following ways during the oil monitor system information display blinks.

- Anything is not operated for 30 seconds
- Turn the engine off

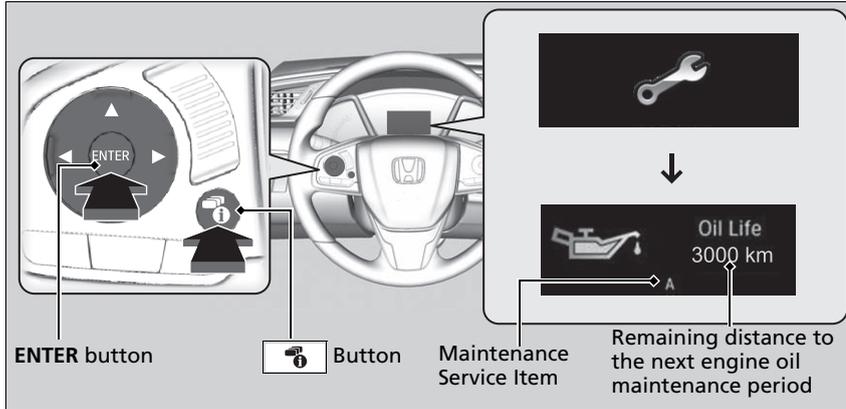
The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Models with driver information interface

## Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Certain maintenance items due soon, along with the estimated remaining oil life, appear on the driver information interface. You can view them on the oil monitor system information screen at any time.



1. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1.
2. Press the button several times until is displayed.
3. Press **ENTER** to go to the oil monitor system information screen. The maintenance service item and the remaining distance appears on the driver information interface along with maintenance items due soon.

The system message indicator () stays on in the instrument panel after the maintenance period reached. Have the indicated maintenance done by a dealer immediately.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

### Displaying the Oil Monitor System Information

Based on the engine operating and engine oil conditions, the remaining distance to the next maintenance period is calculated and displayed.

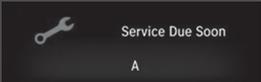
By driving conditions, actual travel distance might be shorter than the displayed distance.

The type and content of the maintenance service items are as follows:

- A. Replace engine oil
- B. Replace engine oil and oil filter

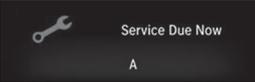
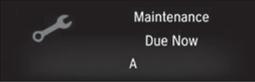
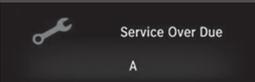
Independent of the oil monitor system information, perform maintenance after 1 year has elapsed since the last oil change.

## Oil Monitor System Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p>NORMAL</p> <p>—</p>		<p>When you reset the remaining distance after an oil change, a series of dots will appear in the oil life display. These dots will remain displayed until the system determines, based on the driving conditions, the remaining distance until the next oil change.</p>
<p>SERVICE DUE SOON</p> <p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 		<p>When you select the oil monitor system information screen, it displays codes for maintenance items due at the next engine oil change, along with the remaining distance.</p> <p>The engine oil is approaching the end of its service life.</p>

\*1: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

Warning Message	Oil Life Display	Information
<p><b>SERVICE DUE NOW</b></p> <p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 		<p>The engine oil has almost reached the end of its service life, and the maintenance service item should be inspected and serviced as soon as possible.</p>
<p><b>SERVICE OVER DUE</b></p> <p>*1</p>  <p>*2</p> 		<p>The engine oil life has passed. The maintenance service item must be inspected and serviced immediately.</p>

\*1: Except Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

\*2: Cambodian, Laotian and Philippine models

## ■ Resetting the Display

You can reset the oil monitor system information display using the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 324

## ➤ Resetting the Display

### NOTICE

Failure to reset the engine oil life after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

The dealer will reset the engine oil life display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the engine oil life display yourself.

If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedule.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except Australian, New Zealand and South African models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000		20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months		12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Non Turbo	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
		Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
	Turbo	When indicator comes on or 1 year										
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Non Turbo	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
		Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Turbo	When indicator comes on or 2 years										
Replace air cleaner element			Every 30,000 km									
Inspect valve clearance	Except E85		Every 120,000 km* <sup>2</sup>									
	E85		Every 40,000 km									
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>						•				•		
Replace spark plugs	Iridium		Every 100,000 km									
	Iridium+E85		Every 60,000 km									
Inspect drive belts				•		•		•		•		•
Inspect idle speed							•					
Replace engine coolant			At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years									
Replace transmission fluid	CVT			•		•		•		•		•

\*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to local warranty booklet.

\*2: Sensory Method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*3: Refer to page 527 for replacement information under severe driving conditions.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Replace dust and pollen filter (If equipped)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km										
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b>											
Tie rod ends, steering gear box, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E
Transmission fluid	B, D

⌘ Maintenance Schedule\*

- The condition is considered as severe when you drive:
- A. less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
  - B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
  - C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
  - D. With a trailer towing\*, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
  - E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

## Maintenance Record

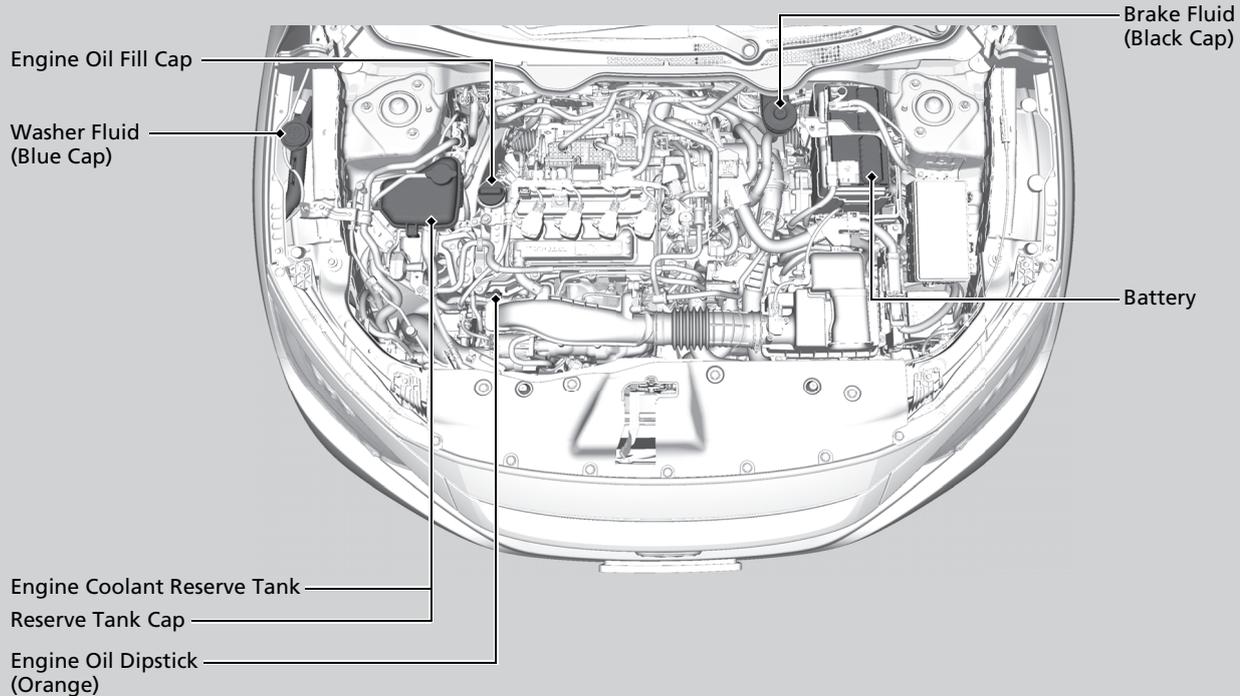
Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

Except Australian, New Zealand and South African models

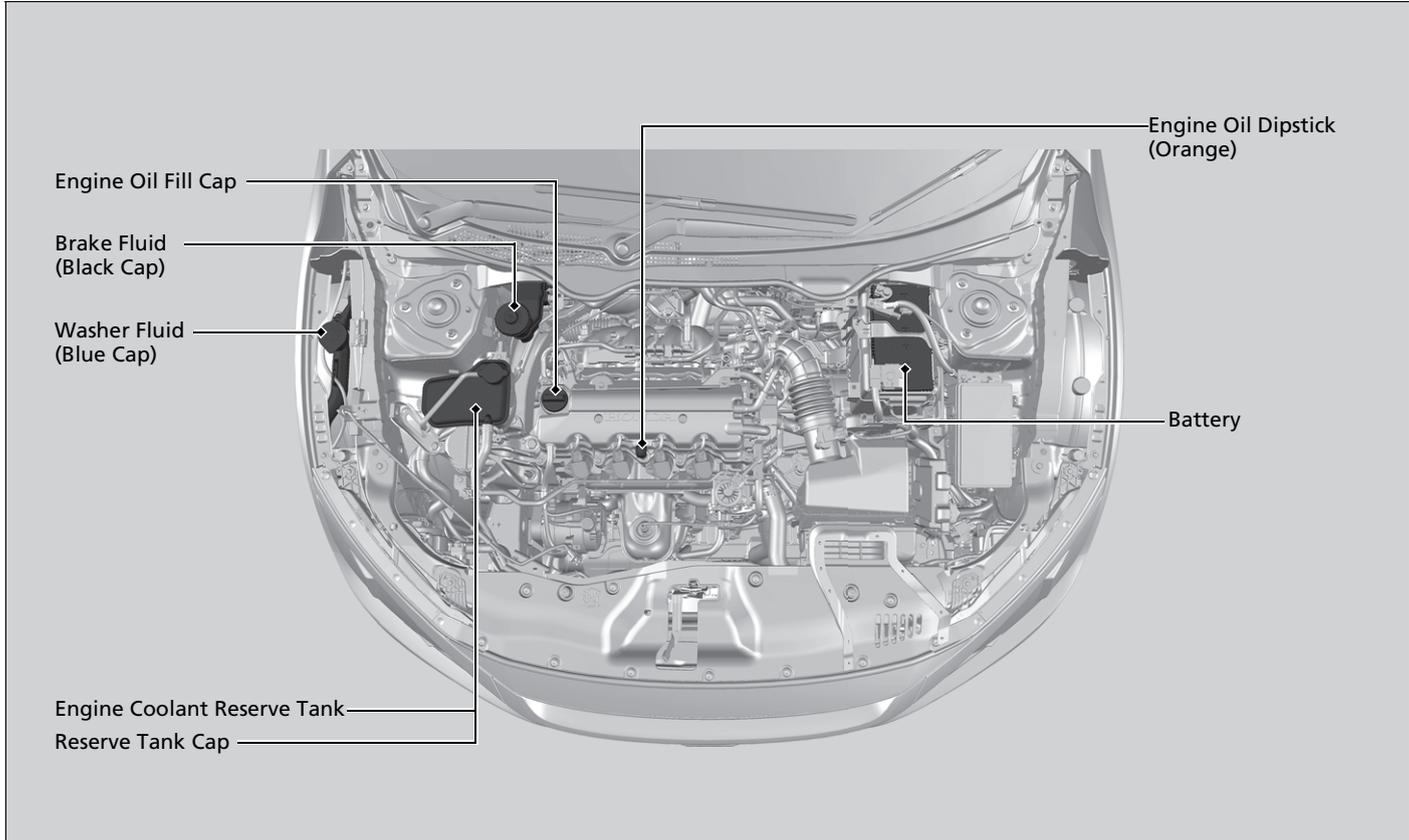
Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km (or 12 Mo.)		
40,000 km (or 24 Mo.)		
60,000 km (or 36 Mo.)		
80,000 km (or 48 Mo.)		
100,000 km (or 60 Mo.)		
120,000 km (or 72 Mo.)		
140,000 km (or 84 Mo.)		
160,000 km (or 96 Mo.)		
180,000 km (or 108 Mo.)		
200,000 km (or 120 Mo.)		

## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet

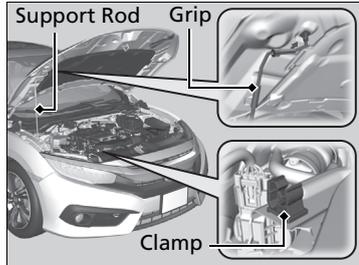
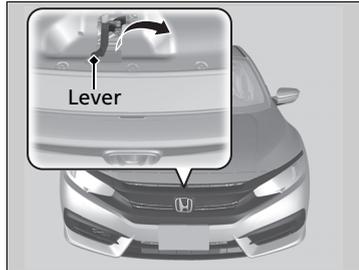
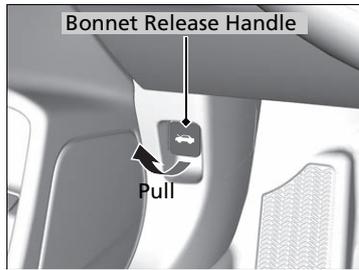
1.5 L engine models



1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models



## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on level ground, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver side's lower outer corner of the dashboard.
  - The bonnet will pop up slightly.
3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.
4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### ► Opening the Bonnet

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

#### **NOTICE**

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, and may damage either the bonnet or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

## » Opening the Bonnet

Except African, Indonesian and Thai models



- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.
- Refer to the owner's manual.

## Recommended Engine Oil

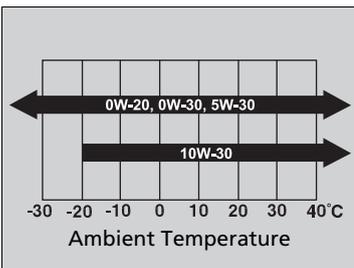
Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

### South African models with 1.5 L engine

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil\*1**
  - **ACEA A3/B3**
  - **ACEA A5/B5**
  - **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**
- \*1: If you use 0W-20, you should use "Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0"**

### Except South African models with 1.5 L engine

- **Genuine Honda Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**



Use a Genuine Honda Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable SAE viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

### Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

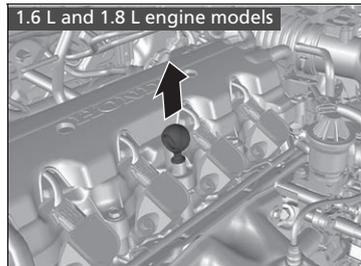
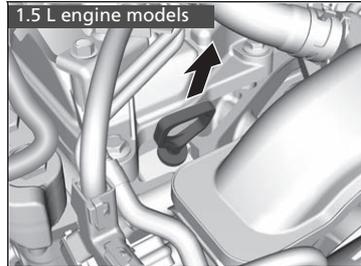
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

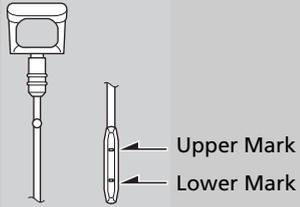
### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km. Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

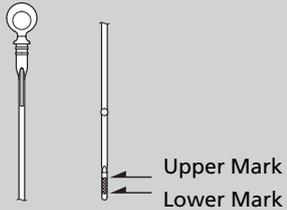
*Continued*

1.5 L engine models

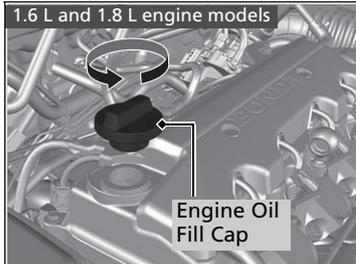
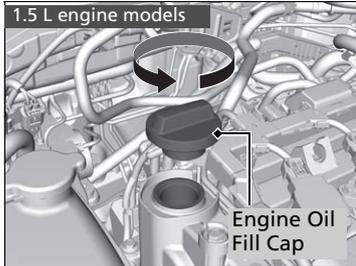


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models



## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper limit mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

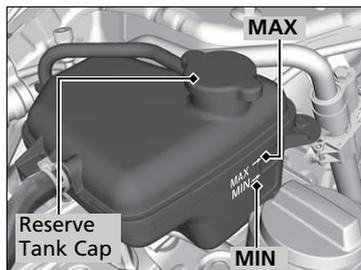
## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Checking the Coolant



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
  - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

### Engine Coolant

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

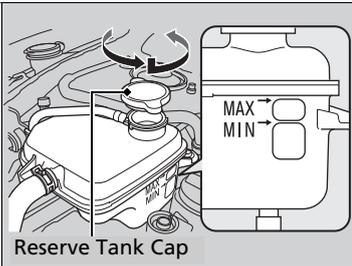
Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

## ■ Adding the Coolant



1. **Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
2. Turn the reserve tank cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the coolant system.
3. Push down and turn the reserve tank cap anticlockwise to remove it.
4. Pour coolant into the reserve tank until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
5. Put the reserve tank cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## ▣ Adding the Coolant

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid**

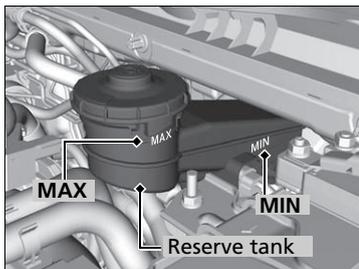
Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 511

## Brake Fluid

**Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4**

### ■ Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

### ▶▶ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda HCF-2 transmission fluids.** Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and may even damage it. Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle warranty.

### ▶▶ Brake Fluid

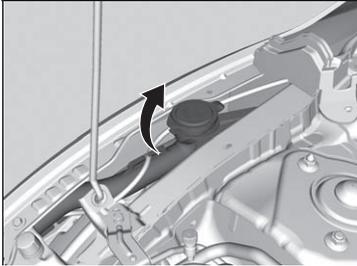
#### NOTICE

Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid



Check the amount of window washer fluid by looking at the reservoir.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

## Fuel Filter

Replace the fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

### Except Australian, New Zealand and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

### Australian, New Zealand and South African models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km, or 3 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

### All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

### ⊠ Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

## Headlight Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**High beam headlight: 60 W (HB3 for halogen bulb type)\***

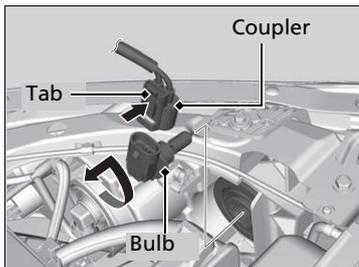
**High beam headlight: LED type\***

**Low beam headlight: 55 W (H11 for halogen bulb type)\***

**Low beam headlight: LED type\***

### High Beam Headlights

#### Models with halogen headlights



1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

#### Headlight Bulbs

##### Models with halogen headlights

##### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the boot, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

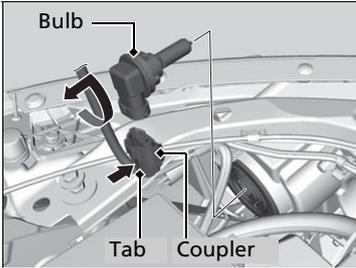
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its base, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.

##### Models with LED headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Low Beam Headlights

Models with halogen headlights

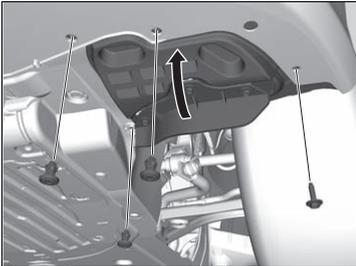


1. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
2. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
3. Insert a new bulb into the headlight assembly and turn it clockwise.
4. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

## Fog Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Fog Light: 35 W (H8 for halogen bulb type)\*  
LED\***



1. Remove the clips using a flat-tip screwdriver, remove the bolt, and push up the under cover.

### ▶▶ Fog Light Bulbs\*

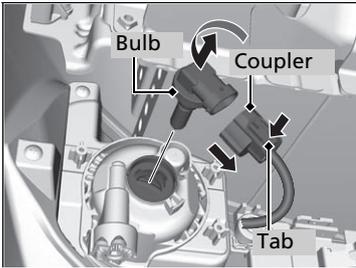
#### Models with LED fog lights

Fog lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

#### NOTICE

Halogen bulbs get very hot when lit. Oil, perspiration, or a scratch on the glass can cause the bulb to overheat and shatter.

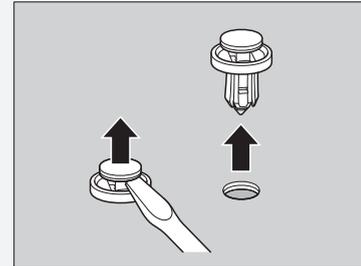
When replacing a halogen bulb, handle it by its plastic case, and protect the glass from contact with your skin or hard objects. If you touch the glass, clean it with denatured alcohol and a clean cloth.



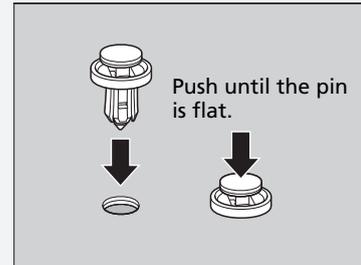
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.
3. Rotate the old bulb anticlockwise to remove.
4. Insert a new bulb into the fog light assembly and turn it clockwise.
5. Insert the coupler into the connector of the bulb.

► Fog Light Bulbs\*

Insert a flat-tip screwdriver, lift and remove the centre pin to remove the clip.



Insert the clip with the centre pin raised, and push until it is flat.



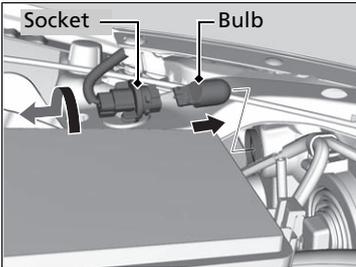
\* Not available on all models

Models with halogen headlights

## Front Turn Signal Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**



1. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models with LED headlights

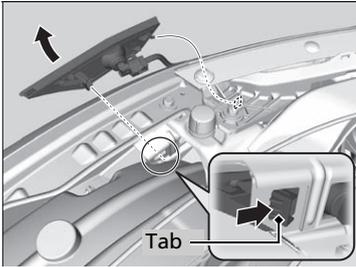
## Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

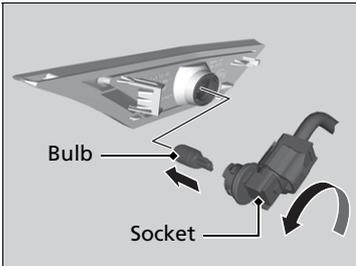
## Front Side Marker Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Front Side Marker Light: 5 W (Amber)**



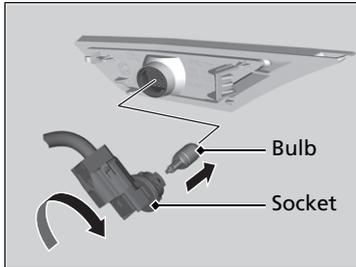
1. Push the tab to remove the light assembly.
2. Push the tab to remove the coupler.



**Driver side**

3. Turn the socket anticlockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models



**Passenger side**

3. Turn the socket clockwise to remove it, then remove the old bulb.
4. Insert a new bulb.

---

## Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

---

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

**Door mirror type**

Side turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

**Fender type**

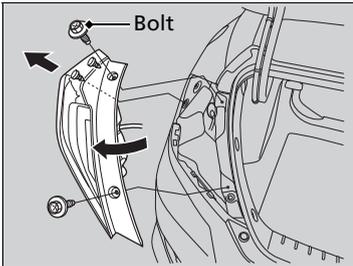
Side turn signal lights bulbs and front side marker light bulbs\* are the same.

➤ **Front Side Marker Light Bulbs\*** P. 533

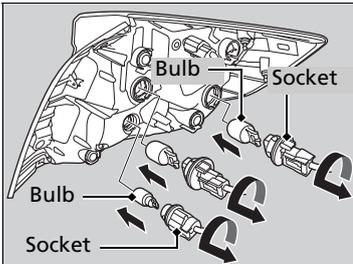
## Brake Light, Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Brake Light: 21 W**  
**Taillight: LED**  
**Rear Turn Signal Light: 21 W (Amber)**  
**Back-Up Light: 16 W**



1. Use a Phillip-head screwdriver or socket to remove the bolts.
2. Pull the light assembly out of the rear pillar.



3. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.
5. Slide the light assembly onto the guide on the body.
6. Align the pins with the body grommets, then push in until they fully seat.

▶ Brake Light, Taillight, Rear Turn Signal Light and Back-Up Light Bulbs

### Models with LED taillights

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Taillights

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

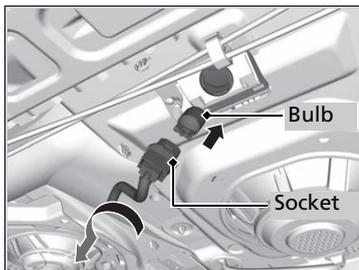
## Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**High-Mount Brake Light: 21 W\*  
LED\***



1. Open the boot.
2. Turn the socket anticlockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### High-Mount Brake Light Bulb

#### Models with LED high-mount brake lights

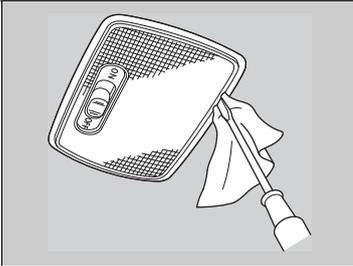
High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorized Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Other Light Bulbs

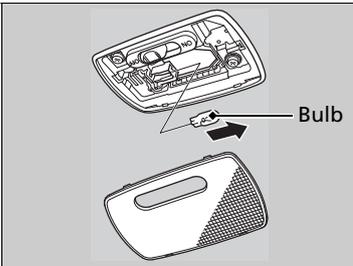
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb\*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



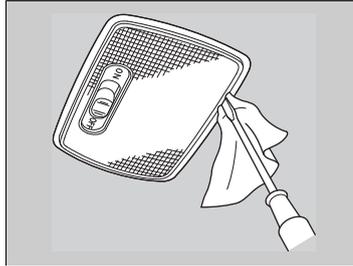
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models

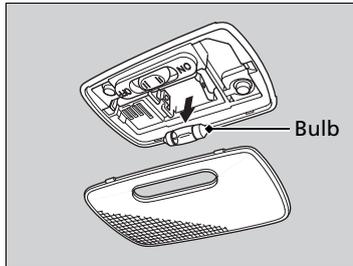
### ■ Ceiling Light Bulb\*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Ceiling Light: 8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



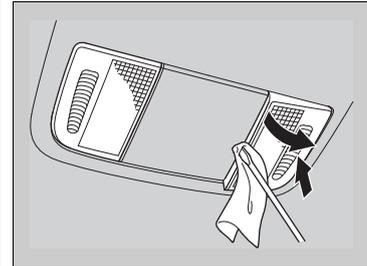
2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models with sunroof switch or ambient light

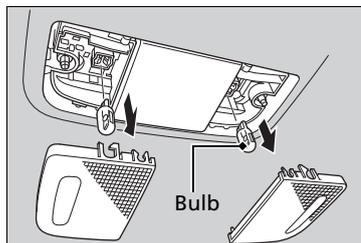
### ■ Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



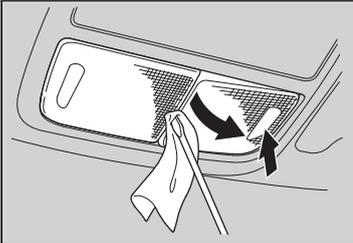
**3.** Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

Models without sunroof switch or ambient light

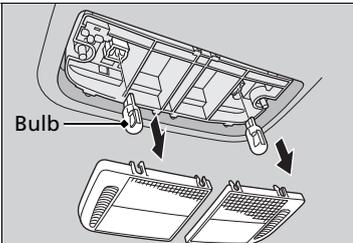
## Map Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Map Light: 8 W**



1. Push on the lens of the opposite side you are replacing.
2. Pry on the edge between the lenses using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



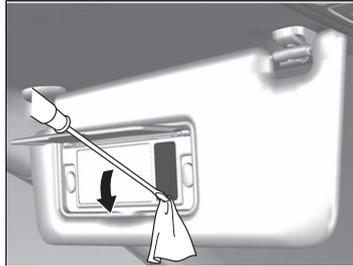
3. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

\* Not available on all models

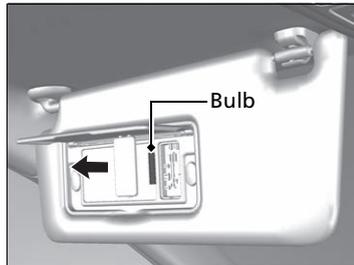
## Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs \*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror: 1.8 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

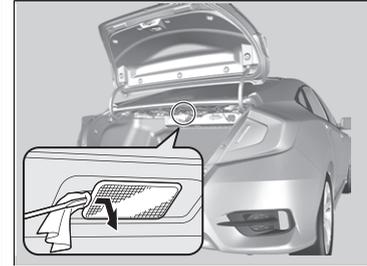


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

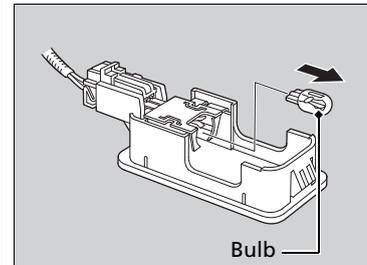
## Boot Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Boot Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

### ■ **Glove Box Light Bulb \***

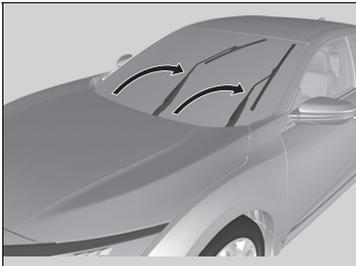
If you need a bulb replacement, consult a dealer.

# Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades

## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Turn the ignition switch to OFF **0**\*1.
2. While holding the wiper switch in the **MIST** position, turn the ignition switch to ON **II**\*1, then to LOCK **0**\*1.
  - ▶ Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
3. Lift both wiper arms.

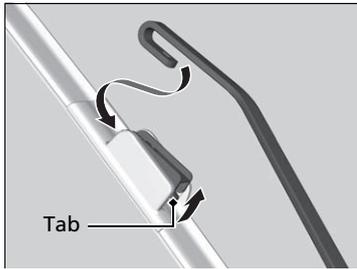
### Changing the Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

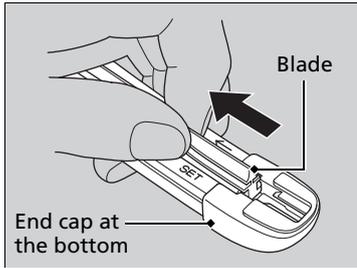
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the windshield.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

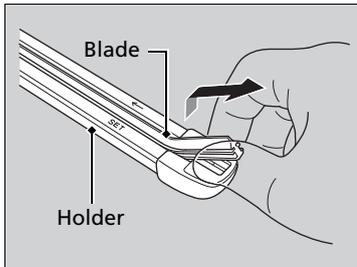
*Continued*



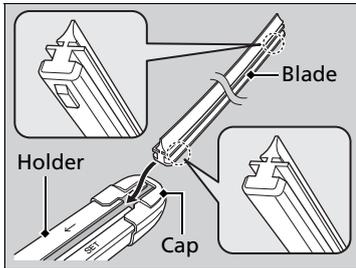
**4.** Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.



**5.** Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.



**6.** Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



7. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade into the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
8. Slip the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
9. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
10. Lower both wiper arms.
11. Turn the ignition switch to ON \*1 and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 1-2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 545

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

\* Not available on all models

### ☒ Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. They are considered as cold when the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

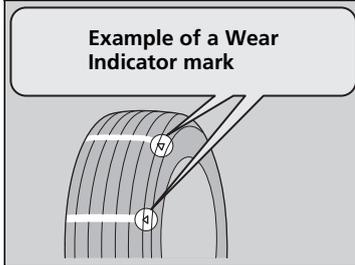
If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system\*.

➤ **Deflation Warning System**\* P. 465

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### ☒ Checking Tyres

#### High speed driving

We recommend that you do not drive faster than the posted speed limits and conditions allow. If you drive at sustained high speeds (over 160 km/h), adjust the cold tyre pressures as shown below to avoid excessive heat build up and sudden tyre failure.

Tyre Size	215/50R17 91V
Pressure	Front: 240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 35 psi) Rear: 230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> , 33 psi)

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ► Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

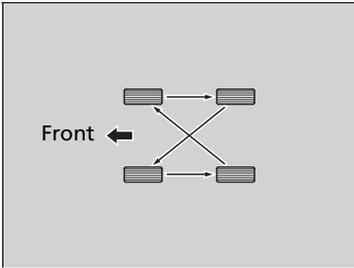
Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

## Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

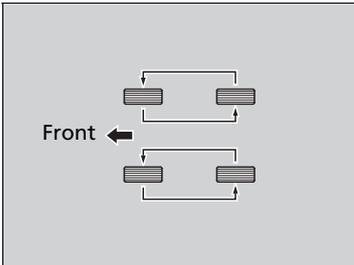
### Models with a compact spare tyre

#### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

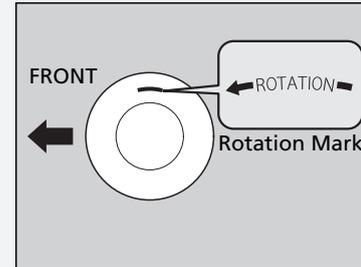
#### ■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ☒ Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must calibrate the deflation warning system\*.

☒ **Deflation Warning System\*** P. 465

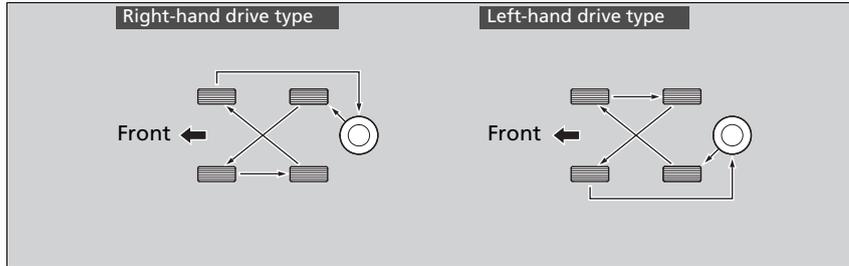
\* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with a full-size spare tyre

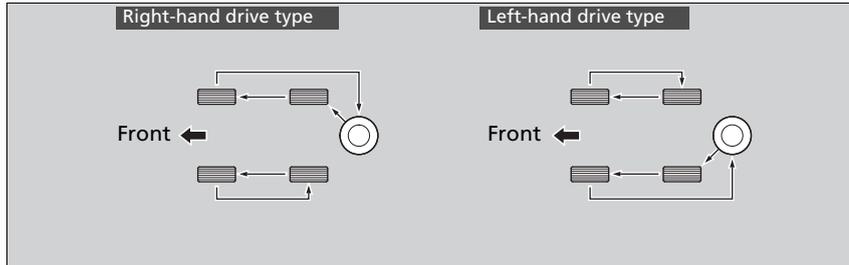
■ **Tyres without rotation marks**

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



■ **Tyres with rotation marks**

Rotate the tyres as shown here.



Except Cambodian, Indonesian, Laotian, Malaysian, Pakistani, Philippine, Thai and Vietnamese models

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/55R16 93H	RUD-matic classic 48489
215/50R17 91V	

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

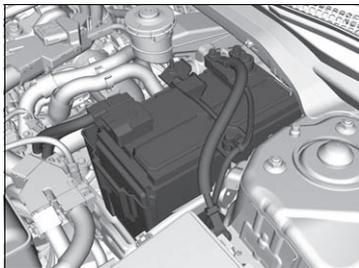
#### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

### Models with driver information interface

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.  
➤ **Clock** P. 148

### Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative ⊖ cable first, and reconnect it last.

### ⌘ Battery

#### Emergency Procedures

**Eyes:** Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin:** Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing:** Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

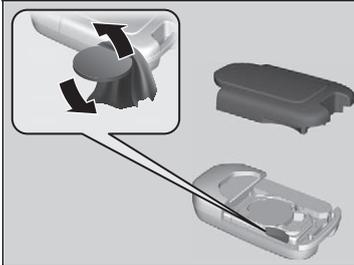
The location of the test indicator window may vary depending on the model.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

## Replacing the Button Battery

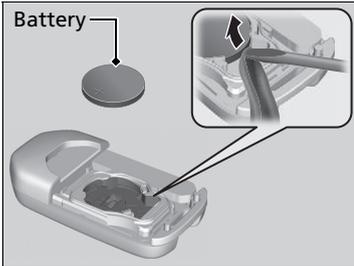
If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

### Retractable Master Key\*



#### Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the upper half of the cover by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.  
▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the retractable key.
2. Remove the button battery with the small flat-tip screwdriver.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### Replacing the Button Battery

#### NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

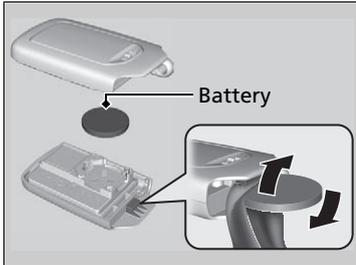
\* Not available on all models

## ■ Keyless Remote \*



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



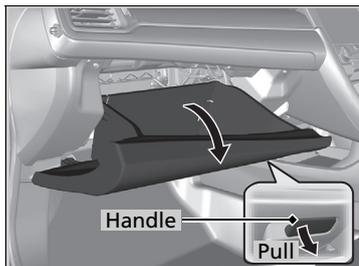
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

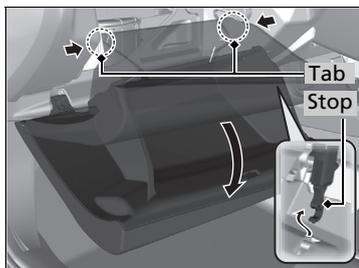
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule\*** P. 511

### How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.



**Models with glove box damper**

2. Push the stop on the driver's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.
3. Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

### Dust and Pollen Filter

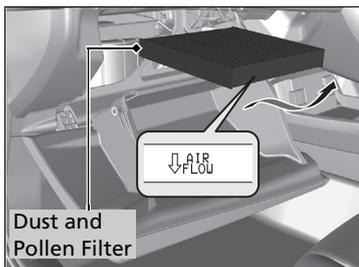
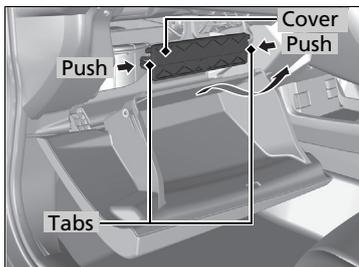
Using an air freshener may reduce the deodorizing effect of the dust and pollen filter, and may reduce its life.

If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.

6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

- Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

#### ►► Dust and Pollen Filter

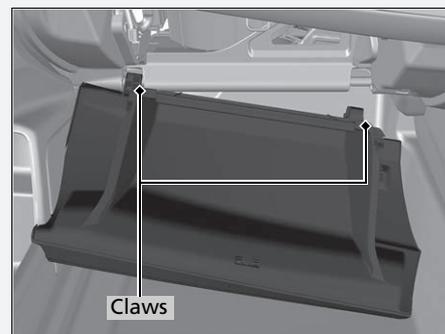
Models with glove box damper

#### NOTICE

When to install the dust and pollen filter:

1. Install the filter case cover.
2. Remove the driver's side claw at the bottom of the glove box.
3. Pivot the glove box up into position. Install the tabs back in place.
4. Open the glove box to angle of about 30 °.
5. Install the hook portion of the stop to the glove box.  
When installing the stop, put a hand from the bottom of the glove box.
6. Install the claw at bottom of the glove box.

After installing the glove box, open and close several times and make sure the glove box is installed properly.



## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

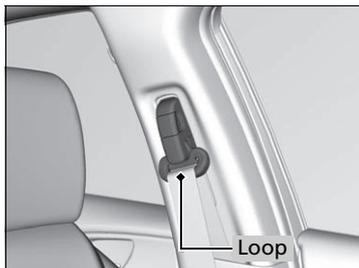
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### ■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



### ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

#### » Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle.

Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches.

Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles.

Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

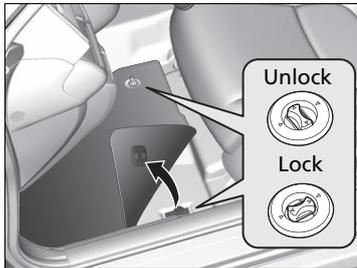
Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

#### » Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

### ■ Floor Mats\*



The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. To remove a mat for cleaning, turn the anchor knobs to the unlock position. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, turn the knobs to the lock position.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mat.**

### ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently. Pay close attention to the pleats and seams. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a 90% water and 10% neutral soap solution. Then buff it with a clean, dry cloth. Remove any dust or dirt on leather surfaces immediately.

### ▣ Floor Mats\*

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If they are not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

### ▣ Maintaining Genuine Leather\*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive.

Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle frequently. Further, make sure to wash the vehicle in the following circumstances:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers\*.

### Using High Pressure Cleaners

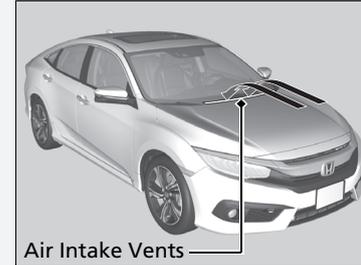
- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

### Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



Do not spray water onto the fuel fill door directly. A high-pressure spray may cause it to open.

## ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. Use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away promptly. Be careful not to use harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners) or a stiff brush. They can damage the clear coat of the aluminium alloy wheels that helps to keep the aluminium from corroding and tarnishing.

## » Applying Wax

### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## » Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - **Fuses** P. 589
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

## Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.

### Accessories and Modifications

#### **WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.



## Tools

Types of Tools..... 564

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 565

## Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine ..... 572

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak.....573

Emergency Engine Stop ..... 574

**Jump Starting** ..... 575

**Shift Lever Does Not Move** ..... 578

**Overheating** ..... 579

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On ..... 582

If the Charging System Indicator Comes On ..... 582

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks ..... 583

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks ..... 584

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on..... 585

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On ..... 586

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator\* Comes On or Blinks... 588

## Fuses

Fuse Locations ..... 589

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 597

**Emergency Towing**..... 598

**When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door**..... 600

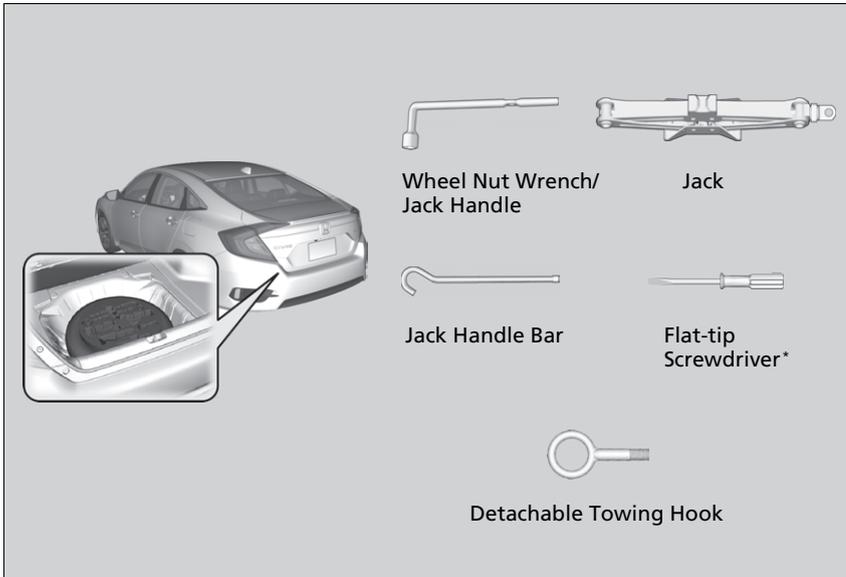
**When You Cannot Open the Boot**.. 601

\* Not available on all models

## Types of Tools

### Types of Tools

The tools were stored in the boot.



## Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre\*/full-size spare tyre\*. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Move the shift lever in **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

\* Not available on all models

### Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:

Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare\*. It should be set to the specified pressure. Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm<sup>2</sup>, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

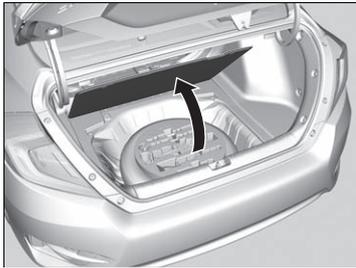
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

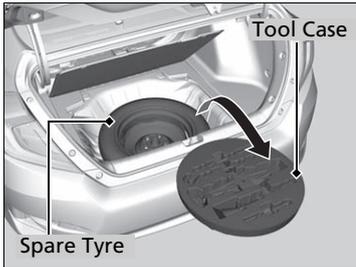
The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

*Continued*

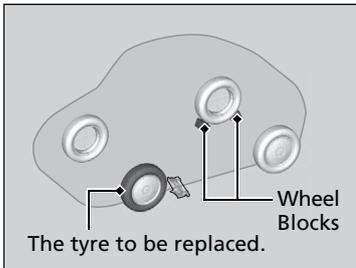
## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the boot floor lid.



2. Take the tool case out of the boot. Take the jack and wheel nut wrench out of the tool case.
3. Unscrew the wing bolt, and remove the spacer cone. Then, remove the spare tyre.



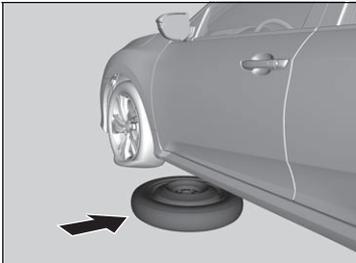
4. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

## ✘ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre

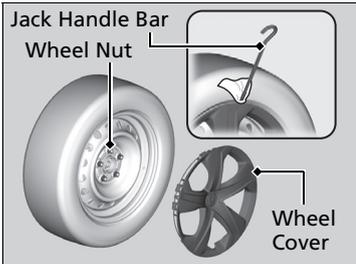
**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



5. Place the spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



**Models with wheel cover**

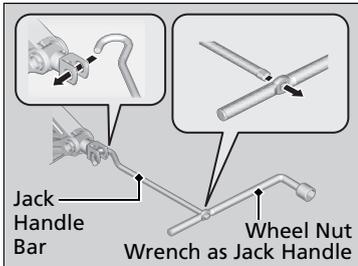
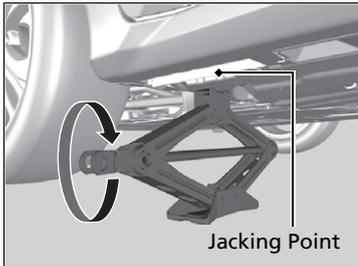
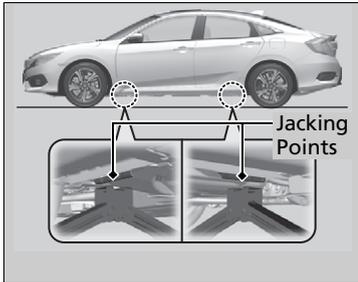
6. Put the flat tip of the jack handle bar into the edge of the wheel cover. Carefully pry the edge and remove the cover.
  - Wrap a cloth around the flat tip of the jack handle bar to prevent scratches on the cover.



**All models**

7. Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## ■ How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.

3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

## ▶ How to Set Up the Jack

### ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

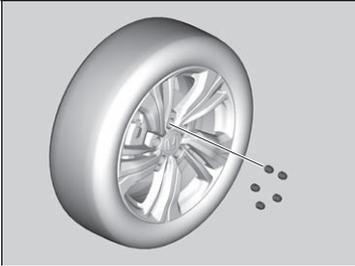
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or their shape may not match.

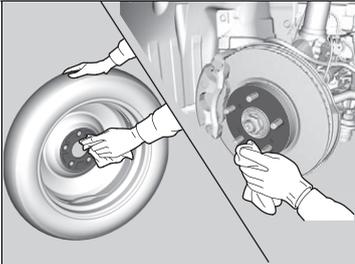
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

## Replacing the Flat Tyre



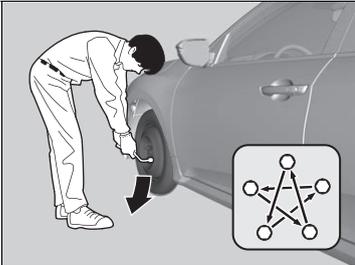
1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.

3. Mount the spare tyre.

4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

### Wheel nut torque:

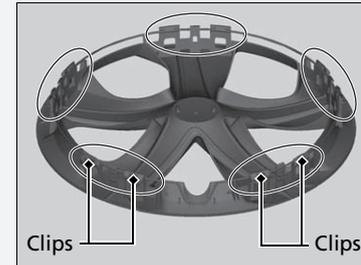
108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

## Replacing the Flat Tyre

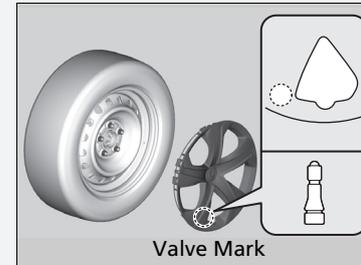
Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

### Models with wheel cover

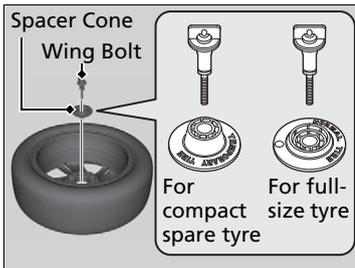
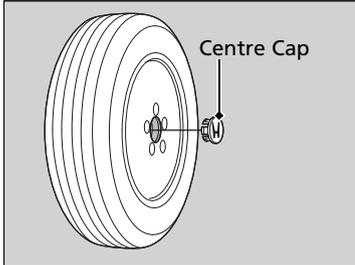
Make sure the wire support ring is hooked into the clips around the edge of the wheel cover.



Align the valve mark on the wheel cover to the tyre valve on the wheel, then install the wheel cover.



## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre



### Models with aluminium wheels

1. Remove the centre cap.

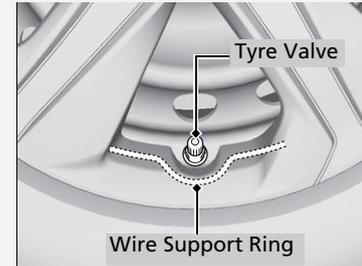
### All models

2. Place the flat tyre face down in the spare tyre well.
3. Remove the spacer cone from the wing bolt, flip it over, and insert it back on the bolt. Secure the flat tyre with the wing bolt.
4. Securely put the jack and wheel nut wrench back in the tool case. Store the case in the boot.

## ▶▶ Replacing the Flat Tyre

### Models with wheel cover

Make sure the wire support ring is on the outer side of the tyre valve as shown.



## ▶▶ Storing the Flat Tyre

### **⚠ WARNING**

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

## ■ Deflation Warning System and the Spare Tyre \*

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometers, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on.  appears on the driver information interface, but this is normal.

Calibrate the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

📖 **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 465

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

### ☒ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

☒ **Jump Starting** P. 575

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button\* for more than 15 seconds.

### Starter condition

### Checklist

#### **Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.**

The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

#### Models with keyless entry system

#### **Check for a message on the driver information interface\*.**

- If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appear
  - ☒ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 573
- ▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range
  - ☒ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 185

#### **Check brightness of the interior lights.**

Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all
  - ☒ **Battery** P. 551
- If the interior lights come on normally ☒ **Fuses** P. 589

#### **The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.**

There may be a problem with the fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

#### **Review the engine start procedure.**

Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ☒ **Starting the Engine** P. 408, 411

#### **Check the immobilizer system indicator.**

When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started.

☒ **Immobilizer System** P. 175

#### **Check the fuel level.**

There should be enough fuel in the tank. ☒ **Fuel Gauge** P. 137

#### **Check the fuse.**

Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

☒ **Inspecting and Changing Fuses** P. 597

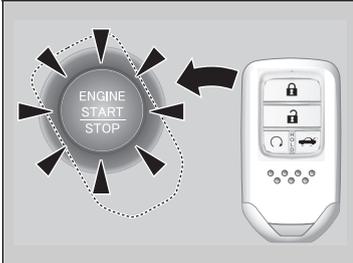
#### **If the problem continues:**

☒ **Emergency Towing** P. 598

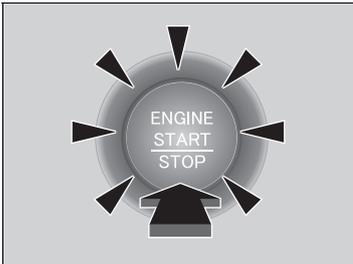
Model with keyless access system

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, and the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows.



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
  - ▶ If you do not depress the pedal, the mode changes to ACCESSORY.

Model with keyless access system

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about three seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

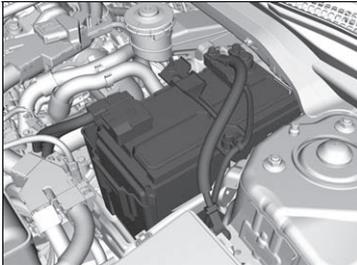
To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), move the shift lever to **P** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

### Emergency Engine Stop

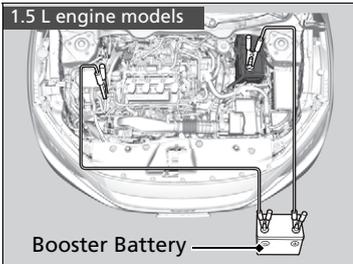
Do not press the button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Open the fuse box cover on your vehicle's battery positive  $\oplus$  terminal.
2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
4. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.



## Jump Starting

### **⚠ WARNING**

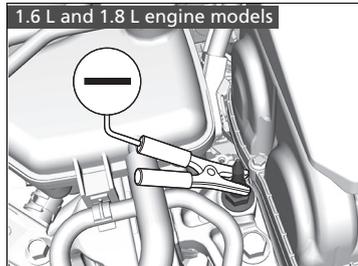
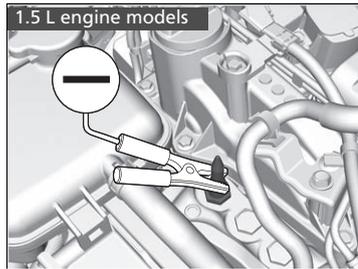
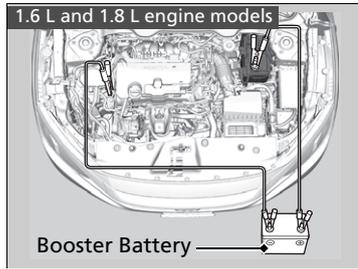
A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

### **NOTICE**

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.



5. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
6. If the jumper cable is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase engine's revolution slightly.
7. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

▶▶ Jump Starting

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

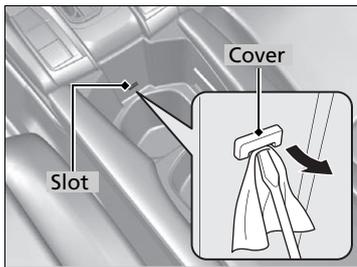
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.

### Models without keyless access system

2. Remove the key from the ignition switch.

### Models with keyless access system

2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.

### All models

3. Move the armrest rearward.

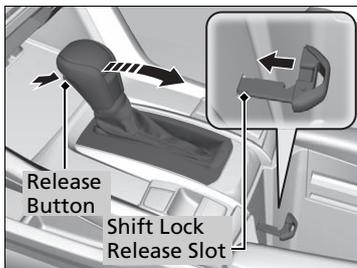
➤ **Front seat beverage holders** P. 217

4. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.

5. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.

6. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button and place the shift lever into **N**.

▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.



## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the **H** mark\*<sup>1</sup> or upper level\*<sup>2</sup> or the engine suddenly loses power.
- **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface.\*
- Steam or spray is comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
  - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

\*1: Except African models

\*2: African models

\* Not available on all models

### How to Handle Overheating

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

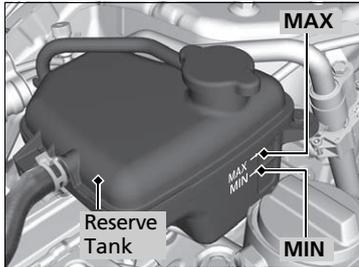
Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

#### **NOTICE**

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer at the **H** mark\*<sup>1</sup> or upper level\*<sup>2</sup> may damage the engine.

*Continued*

### ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the high temperature gauge pointer comes down.
  - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the reserve tank cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ► How to Handle Overheating

### **⚠ WARNING**

Removing the reserve tank cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the reserve tank cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## ■ The Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot Message Appears On The Driver Information Interface.\*

The **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message appears on the driver information interface when the engine temperature is high.

🔧 **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 119

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
  - ▶ Put the transmission into [P], and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
2. Keep the engine running, and wait until the message disappears.
  - ▶ If the message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### 🔧 How to Handle Overheating

Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

\* Not available on all models

## If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
  - **Oil Check** P. 521
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
  - ▶ The light goes off: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The light does not go off within 10 seconds: Stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems, and immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

### ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

### ☒ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ⓘ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



(Red)

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Press the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks

- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

### ☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

P. 585

If you repeatedly operate the electric parking brake in a short period of time, the brake stops operating to prevent heating of the system and the indicator blinks.

It returns to its original state in approximately 1 minute.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on



(Red)



(Amber)

■ **If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically**

➤ **Parking Brake** P. 468

- If the Brake System Indicator (Red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.

➤ **Preventing the vehicle from moving**

Move to shift lever to **P**.

- If only the Brake System Indicator (Red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

☒ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) and the Brake System Indicator (Amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) blinks at the same time when the Brake System Indicator (Amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.
- Comes on when EPS steering angle centre point memory is lost. This could be due to a number of problems to include: battery disconnect, main fuse blow, low battery causing reset of the EPS system, wire damage to EPS harness. Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA), VSA OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)\*, and low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system\* indicators also come on with EPS indicator.

### Models with driver information interface

The **Drive Carefully Systems Initializing...** message appears on the driver information interface.

■ **What to do when the indicator comes on**

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.  
If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
- If the EPS indicator, VSA indicator, VSA OFF indicator, CMBS indicator\*, and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system\* indicator come on simultaneously, you need to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.  
Drive straight at speed more than approximately 20 km/h for less than 10 seconds to calibrate the VSA and EPS systems.  
If the indicators come on and stay on, park your vehicle in a safe place, turn off and restart the engine, then repeat the above operation.  
If the indicators still come on and stay on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

\* Not available on all models

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator\* Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on/blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system or the compact spare tyre\* is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 465

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre\* causes the indicator to blink, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after driving for a few kilometres.

- ▶ Calibrate the deflation warning system after a full-size tyre is reinstalled.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Calibration** P. 465

☒ If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator\* Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, turn the ignition switch to LOCK **0**\*1 and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

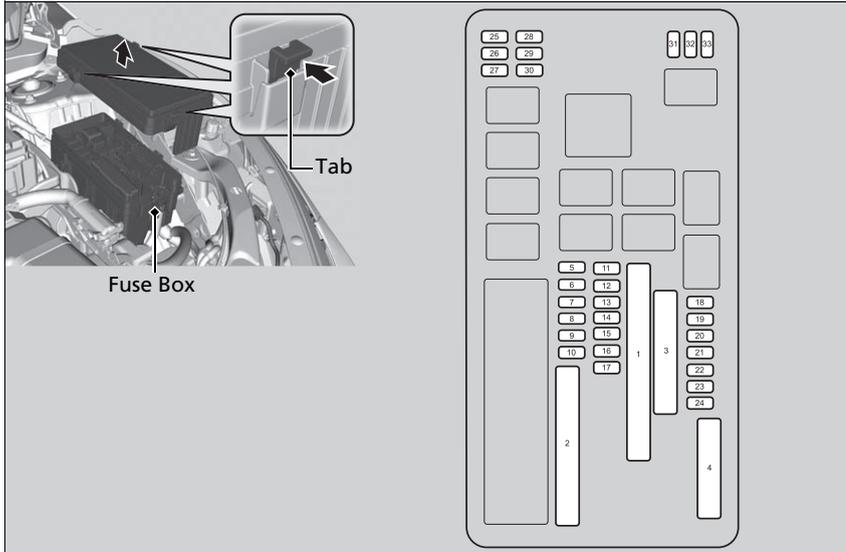
### Engine Compartment Fuse Box

#### Models without fuse label

Located near battery. Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Continued

**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	–	–
	–	(30 A)
	Cooling Fan	30 A* <sup>1</sup> 50 A* <sup>2</sup>
	–	–
	IG Main	(30 A)
	Headlight High Beam Main	30 A
	Battery	100 A* <sup>1</sup> / 125 A* <sup>2</sup>
	EPS	70 A
	IG Main	30 A* <sup>3</sup> 50 A* <sup>4</sup>
	2	Fuse Box Option
Fuse Box		60 A
Front Wiper Motor		30 A
Headlight Low Beam Main		30 A
Rear Defroster		40 A
3	Starter Motor	(30 A)
	Fuse Box	40 A
	ABS/VA Motor	40 A
	ABS/VA FSR	40 A
	Blower Motor	40 A
4	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
	–	–
5	Cooling Fan	(5 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
6	Washer	15 A
7	FI Main	15 A
8	Stop Lights	10 A
9	FI Sub	15 A
10	Injector	(15 A)
11	LAF	(5 A)
12	FI ECU	(10 A)
13	Hazard	15 A
14	–	–
15	IG Coil	15 A
16	Transmission	(15 A)
17	Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
18	Back Up	10 A
19	Audio	(15 A)
20	Position Lights	10 A
21	Interior Lights	10 A
22	Fog Lights	(15 A)
23	A/C Compressor	10 A
24	Horn	10 A
25	–	–
26	Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27	Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28	Stop Switch Signal	(5 A)
29	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
31	–	–
32	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
33	VB ACT	(5 A)

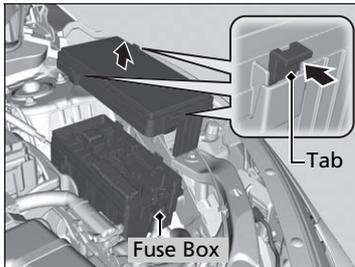
- \*1: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models
- \*2: 1.5 L engine models
- \*3: Models with keyless access system
- \*4: Models without keyless access system

**Models with fuse label**

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

Located near the battery. Push the tabs to open the box.



**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1		– (60 A)
		– (30 A)
		Cooling Fan 30 A* <sup>1</sup> 50 A* <sup>2</sup>
		– (30 A)
		IG Main (30 A)
		Headlight High Beam Main 30 A
		Battery 100 A* <sup>1</sup> / 125 A* <sup>2</sup>
		EPS 70 A
		IG Main 30 A* <sup>3</sup> 50 A* <sup>4</sup>
	2	
		Fuse Box 60 A
		Front Wiper Motor 30 A
		Headlight Low Beam Main 30 A
		Rear Defroster 40 A
3		Starter Motor (30 A)
		Fuse Box 40 A
		ABS/VSA Motor 40 A
		ABS/VSA FSR 40 A
		Blower Motor 40 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
4		– (40 A)
		– (40 A)
		– (40 A)
		– (40 A)
5		Cooling Fan (5 A)
6		Washer 15 A
7		FI Main 15 A
8		Stop Lights 10 A
9		FI Sub 15 A
10		Injector (15 A)
11		LAF (5 A)* <sup>1</sup> 5 A* <sup>2</sup>
12		FI ECU (10 A)* <sup>1</sup> 10 A* <sup>2</sup>
13		Hazard 15 A
14		– (15 A)
15		IG Coil 15 A
16		Transmission (15 A)
17		Daytime Running Lights (10 A)

\*1: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models

\*2: 1.5 L engine models

\*3: Models with keyless access system

\*4: Models without keyless access system

		Circuit Protected	Amps
18		Back Up	10 A
19		Audio	(15 A)
20		Position Lights	10 A
21		Interior Lights	10 A
22		Fog Lights	(15 A)
23		A/C Compressor	10 A
24		Horn	10 A
25		–	(10 A)
26		Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
27		Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
28		Stop Switch Signal	(5 A)
29		Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
30		Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
31	–	–*1	–
		–*2	(20 A)
32	–	–*1	–
		–*2	(20 A)
33		VB ACT	(5 A)

\*1: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models

\*2: 1.5 L engine models

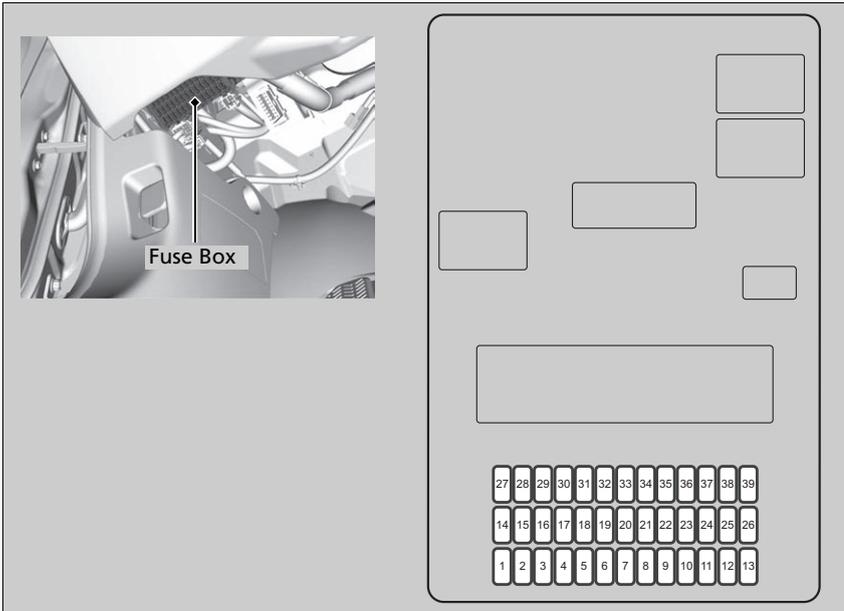
## Interior Fuse Box

### Models without fuse label

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	Accessory	10 A
2	Key Lock	(5 A)
3	–	(10 A)
4	Front Sensor Camera* <sup>1</sup>	(5 A)
	Transmission* <sup>2</sup>	(10 A)
5	Option	10 A
6	SRS Indicator	10 A
7	Meter	10 A
8	Fuel Pump	15 A
9	AIRCON	10 A
10	–	(20 A)
11	Engine Control	5 A
12	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13	Left Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
14	Rear Left Side Power Window	(20 A)
15	Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16	Door Lock	20 A
17	Transmission* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
	Front Sensor Camera* <sup>2</sup>	(5 A)
18	–	(10 A)
19	Sunroof	(20 A)
20	IG1 Starter	(10 A)
21	ACG	10 A
22	Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
23	–	–

	Circuit Protected	Amps
24	Front Sensor Camera	(5 A)
25	Driver's Door Lock	(10 A)
26	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27	Rear Right Side Power Window	(20 A)
28	Driver's Power Window	20 A
29	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30	Keyless Entry* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
	STS* <sup>2</sup>	(5 A)
31	Driver's Power Seat Reclining	(20 A)
32	Front Seat Heater*	(20 A)
33	Driver's Power Seat Sliding	(20 A)
34	VSA/ABS	10 A
35	SRS	10 A
36	–	–
37	Option	(10 A)
38	Left Side Rear Door Lock	(10 A)
39	Driver's Door Unlock	(10 A)

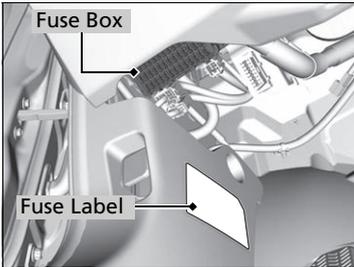
\*1:Models with keyless access system

\*2:Models without keyless access system

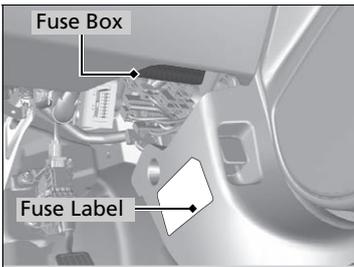
**Models with fuse label**

Located under the dashboard.

**Left-hand Drive Type**



**Right-hand Drive Type**



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

**■ Circuit protected and fuse rating**

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Accessory	10 A
2		Key Lock	(5 A)
3		–	(10 A)
4		Front Sensor Camera* <sup>1</sup>	(5 A)
		Transmission* <sup>2</sup>	(10 A)
5		Option	(10 A)
6		SRS Indicator	(10 A)
7		Meter	10 A
8		Fuel Pump	15 A
9		AIRCON	10 A
10		–	(20 A)
11		Engine Control	5 A
12		Right Side Door Lock	10 A
13		Left Side Rear Door Unlock	10 A
14		Rear Left Side Power Window	(20 A)
15		Front Passenger's Side Power Window	20 A
16		Door Lock	20 A
17		Transmission* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
		Front Sensor Camera* <sup>2</sup>	(5 A)
18		–	(10 A)
19		Sunroof* <sup>2</sup>	(20 A)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
20		IG1 Starter	(10 A)
21		ACG	10 A
22		Daytime Running Lights	(10 A)
23		–	(10 A)
24		Front Sensor Camera* <sup>1</sup>	(5 A)
25		Driver's Door Lock	(10 A)
26		Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
27		Rear Right Side Power Window	(20 A)
28		Driver's Power Window	20 A
29		Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
30		Keyless Entry* <sup>1</sup>	(10 A)
		STS* <sup>2</sup>	(5 A)
31		Driver's Power Seat Reclining* <sup>1</sup>	(20 A)
32		Front Seat Heater* <sup>1</sup>	(20 A)
33		Driver's Power Seat Sliding* <sup>1</sup>	(20 A)
34		VSA/ABS	10 A

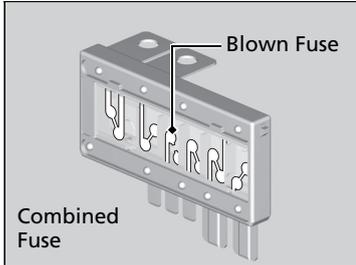
\*1: Models with keyless access system

\*2: Models without keyless access system

\* Not available on all models

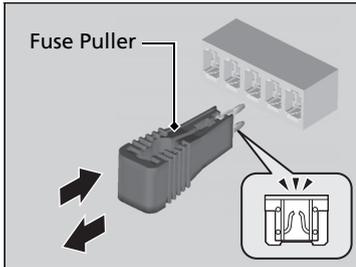
		Circuit Protected	Amps
35		SRS	10 A
36	–	–	–
37		–	(10 A)
38		Left Side Rear Door Lock	10 A
39		Driver's Door Unlock	(10 A)

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Turn the ignition switch to LOCK [0]\*1. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.

► If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.



4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
- If there is a burned out fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse or new one of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

► **Fuse Locations** P. 589, 593

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

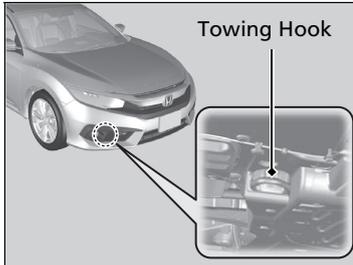
## » Emergency Towing

### NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

### ■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check for any fluid leaks on the ground, underneath the transmission housing.
  - ▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.

### 3. Start the engine.

- ▶ If it is difficult to turn on the engine, put the ignition switch in ACCESSORY **I**\*1 or ON **II**\*1.

### 4. Depress the brake pedal.

### 5. Shift to **D** and hold for five seconds, then to **N**.

### 6. Release the parking brake.

### ☒ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries. Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

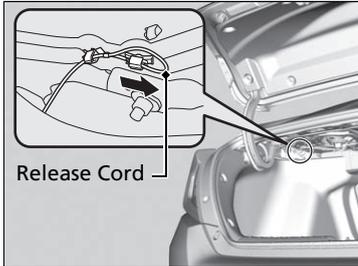
#### NOTICE

If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

\*1: Models with the keyless access system have an **ENGINE START/STOP** button instead of an ignition switch

# When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

If you cannot unlock the fuel fill door, use the following procedure.



1. Open the boot.
2. Pull the green release cord beneath the rear tray to the right.
  - ▶ The release cord unlocks the fuel fill door when it is pulled.

## When You Cannot Unlock the Fuel Fill Door

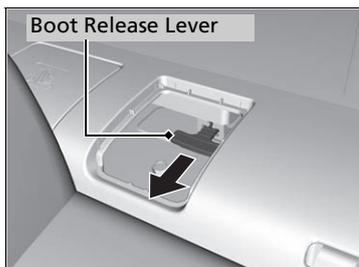
After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.

# When You Cannot Open the Boot

If you cannot open the boot, use the following procedure.



1. Remove the cover with a key.
  - ▶ Wrap a key with a cloth to prevent scratching the cover.



2. Pull the release lever.
3. Replace the cover.

## When You Cannot Open the Boot

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have your vehicle checked.



# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	604
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number .....	607
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves*</b> .....	609

\* Not available on all models

## Vehicle Specifications

Model	Civic
Curb Weight	1,227 - 1,317 kg <sup>*1</sup>
	1,238 - 1,239 kg <sup>*2</sup>
	1,240 - 1,315 kg <sup>*3</sup>
	1,247 - 1,330 kg <sup>*4</sup>
	1,249 kg <sup>*5</sup>
	1,251 - 1,316 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	1,258 - 1,323 kg <sup>*7</sup>
	1,261 - 1,331 kg <sup>*8</sup>
	1,266 - 1,324 kg <sup>*9</sup>
	1,267 - 1,282 kg <sup>*10</sup>
Maximum permissible weight	1,308 kg <sup>*11</sup>
	1,324 kg <sup>*12</sup>
	1,640 kg <sup>*13</sup>
	1,670 kg <sup>*14</sup>
	1,700 kg <sup>*15</sup>
	1,715 kg <sup>*16</sup>
	1,720 kg <sup>*17</sup>
	1,740 kg <sup>*18</sup>
	1,745 kg <sup>*19</sup>
	1,785 kg <sup>*20</sup>

- \*1: Thai models
- \*2: Philippine models with 1.8 L engine
- \*3: Except Australian, Indonesian, Pakistani, Thai and New Zealand models
- \*4: Australian and New Zealand models
- \*5: Singaporean models with 1.6 L engine
- \*6: Malaysian models
- \*7: Indonesian models
- \*8: Vietnamese models
- \*9: African models
- \*10: Pakistani models
- \*11: Philippine models with 1.5 L engine
- \*12: Singaporean models with 1.5 L engine
- \*13: Thai models with 1.8 L engine
- \*14: Malaysian, Indonesian, Pakistani, Philippine and Vietnamese models with 1.8 L engine and 1.6 L engine
- \*15: African models with 1.8 L engine and 1.6 L engine
- \*16: Australian and New Zealand models with 1.8 L engine and except Australian, Indonesian, New Zealand and Singaporean models with 1.5 L engine

- \*17: Indonesian models with 1.5 L engine
- \*18: Singaporean and Vietnamese models with 1.5 L engine
- \*19: African models with 1.5 L engine
- \*20: Australian and New Zealand models with 1.5 L engine

## Engine Specifications

Type	Water cooled 4-stroke DOHC VTEC-TURBO in line, 4-cylinder petrol engine <sup>*1</sup> 1.6 L SOHC VTEC <sup>*2</sup> Water cooled 4-stroke SOHC i-VTEC in line, 4-cylinder petrol engine <sup>*3</sup>
Bore x Stroke	73.0 x 89.5 mm <sup>*1</sup>
	81.0 x 77.5 mm <sup>*2</sup> 81.0 x 87.3 mm <sup>*3</sup>
Displacement	1,498 cm <sup>3*1</sup>
	1,597 cm <sup>3*2</sup>
	1,799 cm <sup>3*3</sup>
Compression ratio	9.7 : 1 <sup>*4</sup>
	10.6 : 1 <sup>*1,*5</sup> 10.7 : 1 <sup>*2</sup>
Spark Plugs	SILZKR7C11S <sup>*6</sup>
	SILZKR7C11DS <sup>*7</sup>
	ILZKAR8H8S <sup>*1</sup>

- \*1: 1.5 L engine models
- \*2: 1.6 L engine models
- \*3: 1.8 L engine models
- \*4: Pakistani models with 1.8 L engine
- \*5: Except Pakistani models with 1.8 L engine
- \*6: 1.6 L engine models and except Thai models with 1.8 L engine
- \*7: Thai models with 1.8 L engine

## Fuel

<b>Thai models with 1.8 L engine</b>	
	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E85 (15% petrol and 85% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher
<b>Thai models with 1.5 L engine</b>	
Fuel:	Unleaded petrol/gasohol up to E20 (80% petrol and 20% ethanol), research octane number 91 or higher
Type	
<b>Pakistani models with 1.8 L engine</b>	
	Unleaded petrol with a research octane number 87 or higher
<b>Other models</b>	
	Unleaded petrol with a research octane number 91 or higher
Fuel Tank Capacity	47.0 L

## Battery

Capacity	36AH(5)/47AH(20)
----------	------------------

## Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L
---------------	-------

### ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	55 W (H11)* LED*
Headlights (High Beam)	60 W (HB3)* LED*
Fog Lights*	35 W* LED*
Front Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)* LED*
Front side marker lights*	5 W (Amber)
Position/Daytime Running Lights	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights	LED* 5 W (Amber)*
Brake Light	21 W
Taillights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	21 W (Amber)
Back-Up Lights	16 W
High-Mount Brake Light	21 W* LED*
Rear Licence Plate Lights	LED
Interior Lights	
Map Lights	8 W
Ceiling Light	8 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*	1.8 W
Glove Box Light*	3.4 W
Boot Light	5 W

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
	<b>1.5 L engine</b>
	405 - 455 g <sup>*1</sup> 435 - 485 g <sup>*2</sup>
Charge Quantity	<b>1.6 L engine</b>
	405 - 455 g
	<b>1.8 L engine</b>
	375 - 425 g <sup>*1</sup> 405 - 455 g <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: Cambodia, Laotian, Philippines and Vietnamese models

\*2: Except Cambodia, Laotian, Philippines and Vietnamese models

### ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4
-----------	-------------------------------

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2 Transmission Fluid	
Capacity	Change	3.5 L <sup>*1</sup> 3.7 L <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models

\*2: 1.5 L engine models

### ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	<b>South African models with 1.5 L engine</b>	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil ACEA A3/B3, A5/B5, API service SM or higher grade 0W-20 <sup>*3</sup> , 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30	
Capacity	<b>Except South African models with 1.5 L engine</b>	
	Genuine Honda Motor Oil API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30	
	Change	3.2 L <sup>*1</sup> 3.5 L <sup>*2</sup>
	Change including filter	3.5 L <sup>*1</sup> 3.7 L <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: 1.5 L engine models

\*2: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models

\*3: If you use 0W-20, you should use "Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0".

### ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water

#### Right-hand drive type

4.92 L<sup>\*1</sup>  
 6.00 L<sup>\*2</sup>  
 5.96 L<sup>\*3</sup>  
 5.80 L<sup>\*4</sup>  
 (change, including the remaining 0.58 L in the reserve tank)

Capacity

#### Left-hand drive type

4.92 L<sup>\*1</sup>  
 5.97 L<sup>\*2</sup>  
 5.94 L<sup>\*3</sup>  
 (change, including the remaining 0.58 L in the reserve tank)

- \*1: 1.5 L engine models
- \*2: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models with breather and heater
- \*3: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models without breather and with heater
- \*4: 1.6 L and 1.8 L engine models without breather and heater

### ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/55R16 93H* 215/50R17 91V*
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Compact Spare*	Size	T125/80D16 97M
	Pressure kPa (kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> [psil])	420 (4.2 [60])
Spare* (Full-size tyre)	Size	215/55R16 93H 215/50R17 91V
	Pressure	Same as the regular tyre. See the label on driver's doorjamb.
Wheel Size	Regular	16X7J* 17X7J*
	Compact Spare*	16X4T
	Full-size Spare*	16X7J 17X7J

### ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

### ■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,620 mm <sup>*1</sup> 4,630 mm <sup>*2</sup> 4,633 mm <sup>*3</sup> 4,644 mm <sup>*4</sup>	
	Width	1,799 mm
	Height	1,416 mm <sup>*5</sup> 1,433 mm <sup>*6</sup>
Wheelbase		2,698 mm <sup>*7</sup> 2,700 mm <sup>*8</sup>
Track	Front	1,543 mm <sup>*6</sup> 1,547 mm <sup>*5</sup>
	Rear	1,557 mm <sup>*6</sup> 1,563 mm <sup>*5</sup>

- \*1: Indonesian models
- \*2: African, Malaysian, Pakistani, Thai, Singaporean and Vietnamese models
- \*3: Philippine models
- \*4: Except Malaysian, Pakistani, Philippine, Thai and Singaporean models
- \*5: Except Pakistani models
- \*6: Pakistani models
- \*7: Thai models
- \*8: Except Thai models

### ■ Max. Towing Weight<sup>\*1</sup>

Trailer with brakes	800 kg
Trailer without brakes	500 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	50 kg

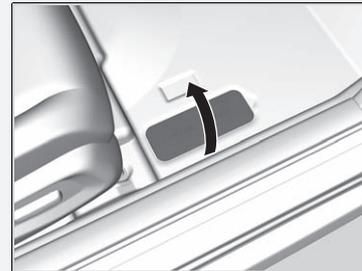
- \*1: Australian and New Zealand models

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.

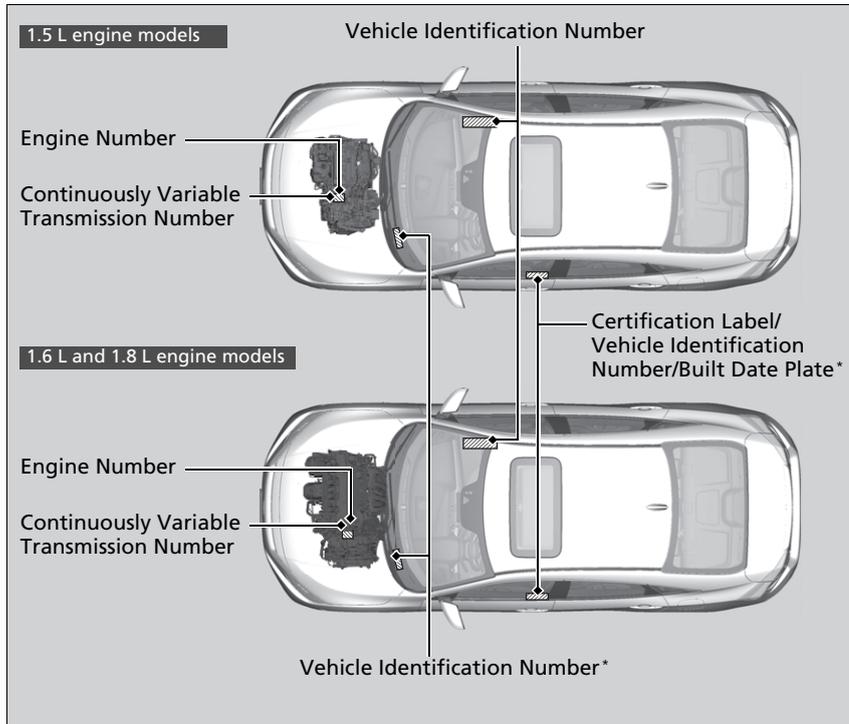
### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



#### Australian models

The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.



# Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Remote Transmitter*	Immobilizer System*	Keyless Access System*	
South African models	 TA-2013/1128 APPROVED	 TA-2013/998 APPROVED	 TA-2013/832 APPROVED	 TA-2015/451 APPROVED
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A	Complies with IMDA Standards DB01752	
Botswanan models	BTA BOCRA/TA/2014/1524	BTA BOCRA/TA/2014/1523	BTA BOCRA/TA/2015/2322	
Zambian models	 ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2014/10/44	 ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2014/10/45	-	

\* Not available on all models

	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)*/ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)*	Hands-Free Telephone System* (Models with colour audio)	Hands-Free Telephone System* (Models with display audio)
South African models	 <p>TA-2012/678 APPROVED</p>	 <p>TA-2015/1281 APPROVED</p>	 <p>TA-2015/1155 APPROVED</p>
Singaporean models	-	-	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;"> <p>Complies with IMDA Standards DAO1740A</p> </div>
Botswanan models	-	<p>BTA BOCRA/TA/2015/2132</p>	<p>BTA BOCRA/TA/2015/2219</p>
Zambian models	-	 <p>ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2015/7/24</p>	 <p>ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2015/8/15</p>

## Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ..... 422

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 473

Accessories and Modifications ..... 562

Accessory Power Socket ..... 219

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low  
Speed Follow (LSF) ..... 112, 437

### Adding

Coolant ..... 524

Engine Oil ..... 523

Washer ..... 527

Additives, Engine Oil ..... 520

Adjustable Speed Limiter ..... 431

### Adjusting

Armrest ..... 212

Front Head Restraints ..... 208

Front Seats ..... 205

Headlights ..... 194

Mirrors ..... 203

Rear Seats ..... 211

Steering Wheel ..... 202

Temperature ..... 144

Adjusting the Sound ..... 246, 284

Agile Handling Assist ..... 462

Air Conditioning System (Climate Control  
System) ..... 223

Changing the Mode ..... 225

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows ..... 226

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 555

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 225

Sensors ..... 229

Synchronized Mode ..... 228

Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 223

### Air Conditioning System (Heating and Cooling System)

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 555

Air Pressure ..... 606

Airbags ..... 53

After a Collision ..... 56

Airbag Care ..... 65

Event Data Recorder ..... 33

Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 55

Indicator ..... 64, 97

Passenger Airbag Off Indicator ..... 65

Sensors ..... 53

Side Airbag ..... 60

Side Curtain Airbag ..... 62

AM/FM Radio ..... 249, 287

Android Auto ..... 312

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ..... 473

Indicator ..... 96

Apple CarPlay ..... 309

Armrest ..... 212

Audio Remote Controls ..... 236

Audio System ..... 232

Adjusting the Sound ..... 246, 284

Audio/Information Screen ..... 242, 264

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout .. 268

Changing the Screen Interface ..... 281

Closing Apps ..... 283

Customizing the Meter ..... 268

Display Setup ..... 248, 285

Error Messages ..... 316

General Information ..... 318

HDMI™ Port ..... 234

Home Screen ..... 274

iPod ..... 254, 293

Limitations for Manual Operation ..... 286

Menu Customize ..... 282

MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 257, 296

Reactivating ..... 235

Recommended Devices ..... 318, 319

Remote Controls ..... 236

Security Code ..... 235

Selecting an Audio Source ..... 286

Status Area ..... 280

Theft Protection ..... 235

USB Flash Drives ..... 318

USB Port(s) ..... 233

Wallpaper Setup ..... 244, 272

Audio/Information Screen ..... 242, 264

### Auto Door Locking/Unlocking

Customize ..... 165

Automatic Brake Hold ..... 471

Indicator ..... 471

Automatic Lighting ..... 191

Average Fuel Economy ..... 139, 143

Average Speed ..... 143

**B**

<b>Battery</b> .....	551
Charging System Indicator.....	93, 582
Jump Starting.....	575
Maintenance (Checking the Battery).....	551
Maintenance (Replacing).....	553
<b>Belts (Seat)</b> .....	40
<b>Beverage Holders</b> .....	217
<b>Bluetooth® Audio</b> .....	260, 299
<b>Booster Seats (For Children)</b> .....	85
<b>Boot</b> .....	172
Lid.....	172
Light Bulb.....	539
Release Lever.....	601
Unable to Open.....	601
<b>Brake System</b> .....	468
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	473
Automatic Brake Hold.....	471
Brake Assist System.....	474
Fluid.....	526
Foot Brake.....	470
Indicator.....	90
Parking Brake.....	468
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)</b> ....	199
<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	528
Back-Up Light.....	535
Boot Light.....	539
Brake Lights.....	535
Ceiling Light.....	537
Fog Lights.....	530
Front Side Marker Lights.....	533
Front Turn Signal Lights.....	532
Glove Box Light.....	540
Headlights.....	528
High-Mount Brake Light.....	536
Interior Lights.....	537
Map Light.....	537
Position/Daytime Running Lights.....	534
Rear Licence Plate Light.....	536
Rear Turn Signal Light.....	535
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights.....	534
Taillights.....	536
Vanity Mirror Light.....	539
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	605

**C**

<b>Carbon Monoxide Gas</b> .....	87
<b>Carrying Luggage</b> .....	399, 401
<b>Certification Label</b> .....	607
<b>Changing Bulbs</b> .....	528
<b>Charging System Indicator</b> .....	93, 582
<b>Child Restraint System</b> .....	66
Booster Seats.....	85
Child Restraint System for Infants.....	69
Child Restraint System for Small Children..	71
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	78
Larger Children.....	84
Rear-facing Child Restraint System.....	69
Selecting a Child Restraint System.....	72
Using Tether.....	81
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	66
Childproof Door Locks.....	163
<b>Cleaning the Exterior</b> .....	559
<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	557
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	223
Changing the Mode.....	223
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows.....	226
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	555
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	225
Sensors.....	229
Synchronized Mode.....	228
Using Automatic Climate Control.....	223
<b>Clock</b> .....	148
<b>Coat Hooks</b> .....	220
<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> .....	476
<b>Compact Spare Tyre</b> .....	565, 606
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	216
<b>Continuously Variable Transmission</b> .....	417
Creeping.....	417
Fluid.....	526
Kickdown.....	417
Operating the Shift Lever.....	24, 418, 419, 420, 421
Shift Lever Does Not Move.....	578
Shifting.....	418, 420
<b>Controls</b> .....	147
<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	524
Adding to the Radiator.....	525

Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	524
Overheating .....	579
<b>Creeping (Continuously Variable Transmission)</b> .....	417
<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	425, 428
Indicator .....	108
<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	217
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	324
<b>D</b>	
<b>DAB</b> .....	290
<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	195
<b>Dead Battery</b> .....	575
<b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> .....	356
<b>Deflation Warning System</b> .....	465
Calibration .....	465
Indicator .....	102, 103
<b>Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows</b> .....	226
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves</b> .....	609
<b>Dimming</b>	
Headlights .....	190
Rearview Mirror .....	203
<b>Dipstick (Engine Oil)</b> .....	521
<b>Directional Signals (Turn Signal)</b> .....	189
<b>Display Setup</b> .....	248, 285
<b>Display/Information Button</b> .....	141, 264
<b>Door Mirrors</b> .....	204
<b>Doors</b> .....	150
Door Open Indicator .....	39, 101

<b>Keys</b> .....	150
<b>Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside</b> .....	162
<b>Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside</b> .....	153
<b>Lockout Prevention System</b> .....	161
<b>Driver Information Interface</b> .....	141
<b>Driving</b> .....	397
Braking .....	468
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	417
Cruise Control .....	425, 428
Shifting Gear .....	418, 420
Starting the Engine .....	408, 411
<b>Dust and Pollen Filter</b> .....	555

<b>E</b>	
<b>Eco Assist System</b> .....	9
<b>ECON Button</b> .....	424
<b>Elapsed Time</b> .....	143
<b>Electric Power Steering (EPS) System</b> .....	586
Indicator .....	101, 586
<b>Emergency</b> .....	598
<b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> .....	475
<b>Engine</b> .....	607
Coolant .....	524
Jump Starting .....	575
Oil .....	520
Starting .....	408, 411
Switch Buzzer .....	184

<b>Engine Coolant</b> .....	524
Adding to the Radiator .....	525
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	524
Overheating .....	579
<b>Engine Oil</b> .....	520
Adding .....	523
Checking .....	521
Low Oil Pressure Indicator .....	92, 582
Recommended Engine Oil .....	520
<b>Engine Start/Stop Button</b> .....	185
<b>EPS (Electric Power Steering) System</b> .....	101, 586
<b>Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)</b> .....	87
<b>Exterior Care (Cleaning)</b> .....	559
<b>Exterior Mirrors</b> .....	204

<b>F</b>	
<b>Features</b> .....	231
<b>Filter</b>	
Dust and Pollen .....	555
<b>Flat Tyre</b> .....	565
<b>Floor Mats</b> .....	558
<b>Fluids</b>	
Automatic Transmission .....	526
Brake Fluid .....	526
Engine Coolant .....	524
Windscreen Washer .....	527
<b>FM/AM Radio</b> .....	249, 287
<b>Folding Down the Rear Seats</b> .....	211
<b>Foot Brake</b> .....	470

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	55
Front Fog Light Indicator .....	104
Front Head Restraints .....	208
Front Seat Heaters .....	222
Front Seats .....	205
Adjusting .....	205
Front Sensor Camera .....	435
Fuel .....	26, 493
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions .....	497
Gauge .....	137
Instant Fuel Economy .....	139, 143
Low Fuel Indicator .....	96
Range .....	139, 143
Recommendation .....	493
Refueling .....	493
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions .....	497
Fuel Fill Cap .....	26, 496
Fuel Fill Door .....	26, 496
Fuses .....	589
Inspecting and Changing .....	597
Locations .....	589, 593
<b>G</b>	
Gauges .....	137
Gear Shift Lever Positions	
Continuously Variable	
Transmission .....	418, 420
Glass (care) .....	560
Glove Box .....	215

## H

Halogen Bulbs .....	528, 530
Hands-Free Telephone System	
(HFT) .....	357, 378
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and	
Call History .....	389
HFT Buttons .....	357, 378
HFT Menus .....	359, 381
HFT Status Display .....	358, 380
Limitations for Manual Operation .....	380
Making a Call .....	374, 393
Options During a Call .....	377, 396
Phone Setup .....	363, 385
Receiving a Call .....	376, 396
Ring Tone .....	369, 388
Speed Dial .....	372, 390
Hazard Warning Button .....	2, 3
HDMI™ Port .....	234
Headlights .....	190
Adjuster .....	194
Aiming .....	528
Automatic Operation .....	191
Dimming .....	190, 195
Operating .....	190
Heated Door Mirrors .....	201
Heaters (Front Seat) .....	222
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone	
System) .....	357, 378
High Beam Indicator .....	104

## I

Identification Numbers .....	607
Engine and Transmission .....	607
Vehicle Identification .....	607
Ignition Switch .....	184
Illumination Control .....	199
Knob .....	199
Immobilizer System .....	175
Indicator .....	106
Indicators .....	90
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) .....	96
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed	
Follow (LSF) .....	112, 437
Automatic Brake Hold .....	92, 471
Brake Depressing .....	110
Charging System .....	93
Collision Mitigation Braking System	
(CMBS) .....	114, 115
Cruise Control .....	108, 425, 428
Cruise Main .....	108, 425, 426, 428, 429
Door Open .....	101
ECON Mode .....	107
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System .....	101
Front Fog Light .....	104
High Beam .....	104
Immobilizer System .....	106
Keyless Access System .....	107
Lane Keeping Assist System	
(LKAS) .....	113, 453
Lights On .....	104
Low Fuel .....	96

Low Oil Pressure .....	92
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System .....	102, 103
Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	93
Parking Brake and Brake System .....	90
Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber) ..	91
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off.....	98
Road Departure Mitigation.....	111
Rotate Wheel.....	109
Seat Belt Reminder.....	95
Security System Alarm.....	106
Shift Lever Position.....	94
Shift to Park.....	109
Speed Limiter .....	108
Supplemental Restraint System .....	97
System Message .....	103
Transmission .....	94
Turn Signal and Hazard Warning.....	104
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist) system .....	99
VSA OFF .....	100, 461
<b>Instrument Panel</b> .....	89
Brightness Control .....	199
<b>Interior Lights</b> .....	213
<b>Interior Rearview Mirror</b> .....	203
iPod.....	254, 293

## J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench).....	568
Jump Starting.....	575

## K

<b>Key Number Tag</b> .....	151
<b>Keys</b> .....	150
Keys .....	150
Number Tag .....	151
Rear Door Won't Open .....	163
Remote Transmitter .....	158
Types and Functions .....	150
Won't Turn.....	29
<b>Kickdown (Continuously Variable Transmission)</b> .....	417

## L

<b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> .....	453
<b>LaneWatch</b> .....	463
<b>Language (HFT)</b> .....	358, 380
<b>Lights</b> .....	190, 528
Automatic .....	191
Bulb Replacement.....	528
Daytime Running Lights.....	195
Fog Lights.....	193
High Beam Indicator Light .....	104
Interior .....	213
Light Switches .....	190
Lights On Indicator .....	104
Turn Signals.....	189
<b>Load Limits</b> .....	401
<b>Locking/Unlocking</b> .....	150
Childproof Door Locks.....	163
From Inside.....	162

From Outside .....	153
Keys .....	150
Using a Key .....	160
<b>Low Battery Charge</b> .....	582
<b>Low Fuel Indicator</b> .....	96
<b>Low Oil Pressure Indicator</b> .....	582
<b>Lower Anchorages</b> .....	74
<b>Lubricant Specifications Chart</b> .....	605
<b>Luggage (Load Limit)</b> .....	401

## M

<b>Maintenance</b> .....	499
Battery .....	551
Brake Fluid .....	526
Cleaning .....	557
Coolant.....	524
Oil.....	521
Precautions .....	500
Radiator .....	525
Remote Transmitter.....	553
Replacing Light Bulbs .....	528
Safety.....	501
Transmission Fluid .....	526
Tyres .....	544
Under the Bonnet.....	516
<b>Malfunction Indicator Lamp</b> .....	93, 583
<b>Map Lights</b> .....	214
<b>Maximum Permissible Weight</b> .....	401
<b>Meters, Gauges</b> .....	137

Mirrors.....	203
Adjusting.....	203
Door.....	204
Exterior.....	204
Interior Rearview.....	203
Modifications (and Accessories).....	562
MP3.....	257, 296
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	491

## N

Numbers (Identification).....	607
-------------------------------	-----

## O

Odometer.....	138, 142
Oil (Engine).....	520
Adding.....	523
Checking.....	521
Low Oil Pressure Indicator.....	92, 582
Oil Monitor System.....	503
Recommended Engine Oil.....	520
Viscosity.....	520
Open Source Licences.....	322
Opening	
Boot.....	601
Opening/Closing	
Bonnet.....	518
Boot.....	172
Power Windows.....	178
Sunroof.....	182

Outside Temperature Display.....	144
Overheating.....	579

## P

Paddle Shifters (7-Speed Manual Shift Mode).....	24, 422, 423
Parking Brake.....	468
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber).....	91
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red).....	90
Parking Sensor System.....	485, 489
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator.....	65
Passing Indicators.....	190
Petrol.....	26, 493
Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions.....	497
Gauge.....	137
Information.....	493
Instant Fuel Economy.....	139, 143
Low Fuel Indicator.....	96
Refueling.....	493
Playing Bluetooth® Audio.....	260, 299
Precautions While Driving.....	416
Rain.....	416
Pregnant Women.....	49
Puncture (Tyre).....	565

## R

Radiator.....	525
---------------	-----

Radio (FM/AM).....	249, 287
Radio Data System (RDS).....	251, 289
RDS (Radio Data System).....	251, 289
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button.....	201
Rear Seats (Folding Down).....	211
Rearview Mirror.....	203
Refueling.....	493
Fuel Gauge.....	137
Low Fuel Indicator.....	96
Petrol.....	493, 604
Regulations.....	609
Remote Transmitter.....	158
Replacement	
Battery.....	553
Bulbs.....	528
Fuses.....	589, 593
Tyres.....	565
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	541
Resetting a Trip Meter.....	139, 143
Road Departure Mitigation (RDM).....	449
On and Off.....	450

## S

Safe Driving.....	35
Safety Check.....	39
Safety Labels.....	88
Safety Message.....	34
Seat Belts.....	40
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor.....	48

Checking .....	50	Spark Plugs.....	604	<b>Towing Your Vehicle</b>	
Fastening.....	46	Specifications .....	604	Emergency .....	598
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	78	Specified Fuel.....	493	<b>Transmission</b> .....	418, 420
Pregnant Women.....	49	Speed Limiter, Adjustable.....	431	7-Speed Manual Shift Mode.....	422
Reminder.....	43	Speedometer .....	137	Continuously Variable Transmission.....	418, 420
Warning Indicator .....	43, 95	SRS Airbags (Airbags).....	55	Fluid.....	526
<b>Seats</b> .....	205	Start/Stop Button.....	185	Gear Position Indicator .....	95
Adjusting.....	205	<b>Starting the Engine</b> .....	408, 411	Number.....	607
Front Seat Heaters .....	222	Does Not Start.....	572	Shift Lever Position Indicator.....	94, 419, 421
Front Seats.....	205	Engine Switch Buzzer .....	184	<b>Trip Knob</b> .....	138, 142
Rear Seats.....	211	Jump Starting .....	575	<b>Trip Meter</b> .....	139, 142
<b>Security System</b> .....	175	<b>Steering Wheel</b> .....	202	<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	563
Immobilizer System Indicator.....	106	Adjusting.....	202	Blown Fuse.....	589, 593
Security System Alarm Indicator .....	106	<b>Stopping</b> .....	484	Brake Pedal Vibrates.....	29
<b>Select Lever</b> .....	418, 420	<b>Sunroof</b> .....	182	Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door.....	30
Operation .....	418, 420	<b>Supplemental Restraint System (SRS)</b> .....	55	Emergency Towing.....	598
Releasing .....	578	<b>Switches (Around the Steering Wheel)</b> .....	2, 3, 4, 184	Engine Won't Start.....	572
Won't Move .....	578	<b>System Message Indicator</b> .....	103	Noise When Braking.....	31
<b>Selecting a Child Restraint System</b> .....	72			Overheating .....	579
<b>Selector Knob (Audio)</b> .....	240	<b>T</b>		Puncture/Flat Tyre.....	565
<b>Setting the Clock</b> .....	148	<b>Tachometer</b> .....	137	Rear Door Won't Open.....	30
<b>Shift Lever</b> .....	418, 420	<b>Temperature</b> .....	144	Select Lever Won't Move.....	578
<b>Shift Lever Position Indicator</b> ....	94, 419, 421	Outside Temperature Display .....	144	Warning Indicators.....	90
<b>Shifting (Transmission)</b> .....	418, 420	<b>Temperature Sensor</b> .....	144, 229	<b>Turn Signals</b> .....	189
<b>Shoulder Anchor</b> .....	48	<b>Time (Setting)</b> .....	148	Indicators (Instrument Panel) .....	104
<b>Side Airbags</b> .....	60	<b>Tools</b> .....	564	<b>Tyres</b> .....	544
<b>Side Curtain Airbag</b> .....	62	<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	402	Air Pressure .....	606
<b>Siri Eyes Free</b> .....	308	Equipment and Accessories .....	404	Checking and Maintaining .....	544
<b>Smartphone Connection</b> .....	303	Load Limits .....	402	Inspection .....	544
<b>Spare Tyre</b> .....	565, 606			Puncture (Flat Tyre).....	565

- Rotation ..... 547
  - Spare Tyre ..... 565, 606
  - Tyre Chains..... 549
  - Wear Indicators ..... 545
  - Winter ..... 549
- U**
- Unlocking the Doors..... 153
  - Unlocking the Front Doors from the  
  Inside ..... 162
  - USB Adapter Cable ..... 232
  - USB Flash Drives..... 257, 296, 318
  - USB Port(s)..... 233
- V**
- Vanity Mirrors ..... 7
  - Vehicle Identification Numbers ..... 607
  - Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)..... 460
    - OFF Indicator ..... 100
    - Off Switch ..... 461
    - System Indicator ..... 99
  - Viscosity (Oil)..... 520, 605
  - VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)..... 460
- W**
- Wallpaper..... 244, 272
  - Warning and Information
    - Messages ..... 116, 117
  - Warning Indicator On/Blinking..... 582
  - Warning Labels..... 88
  - Watts ..... 605
  - Wear Indicators (Tyre)..... 545
  - Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) ..... 568
  - Wi-Fi Connection ..... 306
  - Window Washers ..... 196
    - Adding/Refilling Fluid ..... 527
    - Switch ..... 196
  - Windows (Opening and Closing) ..... 178
  - Windscreen ..... 196
    - Cleaning ..... 560
    - Defrosting/Defogging..... 226
    - Washer Fluid ..... 527
    - Wiper Blades ..... 541
    - Wipers and Washers..... 196
  - Winter Tyres ..... 549
    - Tyre Chains ..... 549
  - Wipers and Washers..... 196
    - Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades..... 541
  - WMA ..... 257, 296
  - Worn Tyres..... 544



